

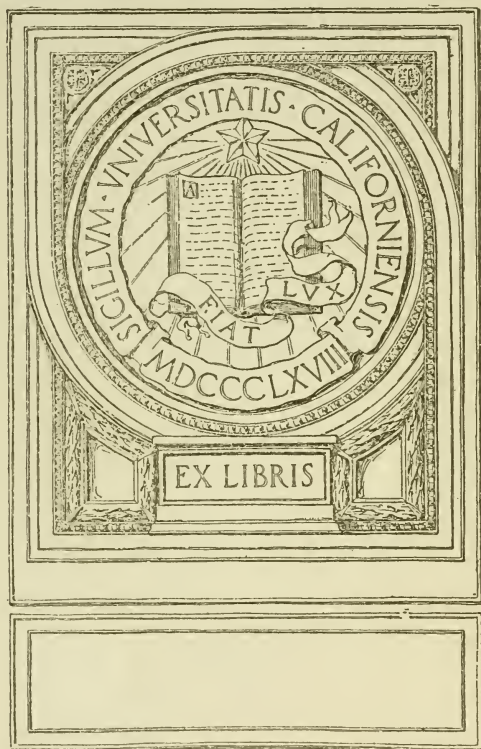
**P J**  
**6111**  
**D57**  
**1904**  
**MAIN**

**UC-NRLF**



**B 4 019 980**

GIFT OF  
HORACE W. CARPENTIER



EX LIBRIS







DIRR'S COLLOQUIAL  
EGYPTIAN ARABIC  
GRAMMAR

*FOR THE USE OF TOURISTS*

TRANSLATED BY

W. H. LYALL, M.A.

BRASENOSE COLLEGE, OXFORD

WITH VOCABULARY

HENRY FROWDE  
LONDON, EDINBURGH, GLASGOW  
NEW YORK AND TORONTO

1904

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

OXFORD: HORACE HART  
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

*Carpenter*

PJ6111  
D57  
1904  
MAIN

## PREFACE

THERE are of course many aids to the study of colloquial Arabic, especially the dialect of Egypt. I mention here only the excellent publications of Spitta Bey, Hartmann and Vollers, to say nothing of the numerous conversational guides. If I have increased the number of works on the subject by this present grammar, I have done so with the object of putting into the hands of the student who is not a philologist, who knows neither classical Arabic nor one of its modern dialects, a book which, in contrast to most works that have as yet appeared on the subject, does not presume any previous knowledge on the part of the student, and which removes, wherever possible, the difficulties that must arise in the study of an idiom so very different from that of the Indo-European languages. With this intention I have put the elements of the language into lessons, with progressive exercises well adapted to the requirements of the beginner; and I have decided to abandon any attempt at giving a systematic representation of the grammar, which would be unnecessary in the early stages. The book is then above all things *practical*, and I hope it may be judged as such. The phrases given at the end of the grammar will be found useful; and the reading-matter at the end, with inter-linear translation, will serve to impress on the memory what has already been learnt, and will also give a good example of connected speech.

As regards the use of the book, I should like to make the following remarks. In the first place, if possible one should learn the pronunciation from some one who knows Egyptian Arabic. If this is not practicable one should pronounce the consonants as correctly as possible. The consonants in Arabic are of much more importance than the vowels; the latter are somewhat vari-

able, and are almost always left out in writing<sup>1</sup>. Reading the chrestomathy slowly aloud will accustom the student to the sound of the language. The ع (*én*) and the *hamzä* must never be slurred over and they should always be regarded as definite consonants; *s* is always sharp like *ss*; *z* is smooth like the *s* in *rose*; a distinction must be made between *t* and *d*; *p* does not occur in Arabic, so the word pasha must be *bāša* and not *pāša*.

The Arabic exercises may be translated into English and then back again into Arabic; in this way additional exercises may be formed. The verbs given after each conjugation should be conjugated throughout: the verb is the soul of the Arabic language. Of course the learning of a language consists largely in learning by heart.

One should not allow oneself to be frightened by the tales of the excessive difficulty of learning Arabic; colloquial Arabic has very few stumbling-blocks. Russian and Hungarian are much harder; for my own part I maintain that French necessitates much more work. Even in the case of the notorious verb, the student will soon see that all its different forms have in reality but one conjugation. It really is not very difficult to initiate oneself into this vigorous language in a comparatively short time. The student who has worked thoroughly through the grammar and the reading-matter will soon find his bearings in other books, especially in reading-books, and, if he has the good fortune to be able to put his knowledge to the practical test in the land of the Pharaohs, he will make rapid progress.

The territory of the modern Arabic dialects stretches over the whole of Northern Africa, part of the South, Syria, Palestine, and the peninsula of Arabia.

The dialects vary in the following provinces (according to Vollers and Burkitt):

1. *Mauretania* (Morocco, Algiers and Tunis).
2. *Egypt*.
3. *Syria* and *Palestine*.

<sup>1</sup> This is, however, only true of the short vowels.

4. *Mesopotamia*.
5. *‘Irâq* (Babylonia).
6. *Western Arabia* (the Ḥigâz).
7. *Southern Arabia* (Yemen and Ḥaḍramût).
8. *Eastern Arabia* (Baḥrên and ‘Omân).
9. *Central Arabia* (Negd, &c.).
10. The Arabic of the *Bedawîn* forms a class by itself.

The dialect of which the present book treats is that of Cairo. The language of Egypt is at present only a spoken one of very doubtful origin—the Egyptian dialect is not written. The Classical or Literary Arabic has been admirably treated in Professor Adolf Wahrmund’s grammar: it is unnecessary to go into it in the present work. If I have devoted a few pages to the Arabic alphabet and script, I have done so only to give the student some insight into the writing.

The spoken forms of Egyptian Arabic (according to Spitta Bey) are not yet well determined, ‘much varies still, and much changes continually in the mouth of the people. The natives themselves say that their language is *bi’ligtihâd*, i. e. according to each one’s personal fancy. If a man of the uneducated classes is asked what is the right expression to use in a certain case, he will frequently answer *kulloh zé bâ’doh*, it is all the same.’ However, they look down on the Arabic of Europeans and Copts. I quote Spitta Bey here, but I have often had similar experiences in my intercourse with Arabs.

THE AUTHOR.



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
THE ALPHABET . . . . .	I
GRAMMAR . . . . .	10
READING MATTER . . . . .	84
NOTES TO READING MATTER . . . . .	120
ARABIC-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	124
ENGLISH-ARABIC VOCABULARY . . . . .	140
CORRIGENDA . . . . .	166





# THE ALPHABET.

## I. THE CONSONANTS.

Name.	Uncon- nected.	Connected.			Trans- scription.
		With pre- vious letter.	On both sides.	With follow- ing letter.	
<i>Alif</i>	ا	ا	—	—	'
<i>Bé</i>	ب	ب	ب	ب	<i>b</i>
<i>Té</i>	ت	ت	ت	ت	<i>t</i>
<i>Thé</i>	ث	ث	ث	ث	<i>t, s</i>
<i>Gím</i>	ج	ج	ج	ج	<i>g</i>
<i>Há</i>	ح	ح	ح	ح	<i>h</i>
<i>Há</i>	خ	خ	خ	خ	<i>h</i>
<i>Dál</i>	د	د	—	—	<i>d</i>
<i>Dhál</i>	ذ	ذ	—	—	<i>d, z</i>
<i>Ré</i>	ر	ر	—	—	<i>r</i>
<i>Zé</i>	ز	ز	—	—	<i>z</i>
<i>Sín</i>	س	س	س	س	<i>s</i>
<i>Šín</i>	ش	ش	ش	ش	<i>š</i>
<i>Šád</i>	ص	ص	ص	ص	<i>š</i>
<i>Dád</i>	ض	ض	ض	ض	<i>đ</i>

Name.	Unconnected.	Connected.			Transcription.
		With previous letter.	On both sides.	With following letter.	
<i>Tá</i>	ط	ط	ط	ط	<i>t</i>
<i>Zá</i>	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ	<i>d, z</i>
<i>'én</i>	ع	ع	ع	ع	<i>'</i>
<i>gén</i>	غ	غ	غ	غ	<i>g</i>
<i>Fé</i>	ف	ف	ف	ف	<i>f</i>
<i>Qáf</i>	ق	ق	ق	ق	<i>q</i>
<i>Kef</i>	ك ك	ك ك	ك	ك	<i>k</i>
<i>Lám</i>	ل	ل	ل	ل	<i>l</i>
<i>Mím</i>	م	م	م	م	<i>m</i>
<i>Nún</i>	ن	ن	ن	ن	<i>n</i>
<i>Hé</i>	ه	ه	ه	ه	<i>h</i>
<i>Wáw</i>	و	و	—	—	<i>w, ú or ó</i>
<i>Yé</i>	ي	ي	ي	ي	<i>y, í or é</i>
<i>Lám-Alif</i>	لا	لا	—	—	<i>lá</i>

## II. THE VOWELS.

The Arabic alphabet is really composed of consonants alone; to write the vowels recourse must be had to supplementary signs.

Short vowels, which are nearly always left out in writing, can be written as follows<sup>1</sup> :—

<sup>1</sup> Arabic is written from right to left.

*a, ä, e* by  $\text{ـ}$  (*fatḥ*): e.g. كَتَبَ *kátab*, he wrote; جَبَلَ *gābāl*, mountain. Short *i* by  $\text{ـِ}$  (*kesr*): e.g. عَرَفَ *‘irif*, he knew; سِنَّ *sinn*, tooth. Short *u* by  $\text{ـُ}$  (*ḍamm*): e.g. حُكْمَ *ḥukm*, judgement; كُتُبَ *kútub*, books.

Long vowels, on the other hand, must be written:—

*ā* by means of  $\text{ا}$ : e.g. نَارَ *nār*, fire; جَابَ *gāb*, he brought.

*ī* by means of  $\text{ي}$ : e.g. كَيْسَ *kīs*, purse; قَلِيلَ *qalīl*, few.

*ū* by means of  $\text{و}$ : e.g. قَوْلَ *qúl*, say! نورَ *nūr*, light; شَوْفَ *šúf*, see!

The diphthongs *au* and *ei* appear in Arabic, but are usually found as *ó* and *é* (written  $\text{وِ}$  and  $\text{يِ}$ ): e.g. حَيْرَ *ḥair* = *hér*, goodness; بَيْنَ *baín* = *bén*, between; بَيْتَ *bét*, house; نَوْمَ *naúm* = *nóm*, sleep; يَوْمَ *yóm*, day.

The diphthongs *oi*, *iu*, *úi* also occur, but rarely, as *móiyē*, water; *iudán*, ears; *istúilā*, occupation.

If there is no vowel attached to a consonant the *sukún*  $\text{ـْ}$  may be written over it: e.g. مَوْلَاكَ *múlk*, property; شَحْمَ *šaḥm*, tallow.

For *hamzä* \* see under pronunciation.

The *tešdíd*, in shape like a small  $\text{س}$ , is placed over a consonant to show that it is doubled: e.g. حَرَّ *ḥarr*, hot; بُنَّ *bunn*, coffee-bean.

The *madd* ~ is placed over  $\text{ا}$  to show that there are really two *ālif*s: e.g. آدَمَ *ádam*, man. In writing it is usually omitted.

These short notes on Arabic writing must suffice. Since the language treated in this book is only a spoken one, it would be waste of time to trouble the student with the many orthographical rules which exist in classical Arabic. If the student desires to study the written language he can find it in any of the larger grammars.

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE CONSONANTS.

$\text{ا}$  *‘alif* (*hamzä* \*). This letter has no characteristic sound of its own. Whenever it occurs there is a short interval of silence (hiatus). The *h* in the French *la honte* resembles the sound of *hamzä*. The same sound occurs at the beginning of the German

words *ach*, *oben*. In Arabic it frequently occurs in the middle of a word, and care must be taken to articulate it.

Let us take the words *sa'al*, ask ; *'addib*, educate ; *yi'addib*. In these words there must be a sharp pause where ' is : thus not *sāāl* but *sā'al* ; not *yīāddib* but *yī-āddib*. Distinction must be made between ' by which we transcribe *alif* (*hamzā*) and ʿ by which we transcribe *ʿén* ع (q. v.).

There are two distinct sounds attached to ', a sharp one and a smooth one. The former appears in *'ūdḥul*, come in ! *qāl 'ūḥrug*, he said, Go out ! Again, when no vowel follows it : *ma'mūr*, official, or when it stands at the beginning of a syllable and a consonant precedes it, as : *el 'ahl*, the family ; *el 'adān*, the call to prayer. (See also pronunciation of the ق.)

The smooth pronunciation is found when a vowel immediately follows it, or a vowel or a consonant in close union with it precedes it : e.g. *mā 'a'rafš*, I do not know ; *yi'āddib*, he educates ; *ibn 'aḥmed*, Ahmed's son. Often, however, the two vowels are contracted into one, and the hiatus of the *hamzā* disappears : e.g. *mā 'ráfš* ; *yāḥmed* = *yā 'aḥmed*, Oh Ahmed !

ب *b*, as in English : e.g. باب *bāb*, door.

ت *t*, as in English : e.g. تراب *torāb*, dust.

ث *th*, *s*, properly like the English *th*, but more often pronounced as a *t* : e.g. كثير *ketir*, much ; ثور *tór*, ox. Sometimes pronounced like *s*.

ج *g*, in Egypt pronounced hard like *g* in gold, good : e.g. جبل *gābāl*, mountain ; جار *gār*, neighbour. In Syria it is pronounced soft.

ح *ḥ*, is a strongly aspirated *h* pronounced very far back in the throat, but quite smoothly : e.g. حبيب *ḥabīb*, friend. *ḥ* must be distinguished from *h* and from *ḥ*. If *ḥ* stands at the end of a word and is preceded by a consonant, a short euphonic vowel must be inserted between the two to enable *ḥ* to be heard : e.g. صبح *subḥ*, morning, pronounced *ṣubḥ*. In the same way, if it closes a syllable after *i* or *u*, a short *a* is inserted (in the pronunciation only) : e.g. مائع *mālīḥ*, good ; ريح *rīḥ*, wind ; سطوح *suṭūḥ*, roofs.

ح *h*, has a strong guttural sound like the German *ch* in *doch*, or like the Scotch *ch* in *loch*. The same rules about insertion of a short vowel before it hold as with *h*: e.g. تاريخ *tārīʿh*, history.

د *d*, as in English: e.g. دفع *dafaʿ*, pay; برد *bard*, cold.

ذ *d*, *z*, formerly sounded like English *th*. Now either like *d*: e.g. ذهب *dahab*, gold, or like *z*: e.g. اذن *'izn*, permission.

ر *r*, as in English: e.g. راجل (رجل) *rāgil*, man; عرف *'irif*, know; بير *bīr*, well.

ز *z*, like the soft *s* in *rose*: e.g. لوز *lōz*, almonds; زير *zīr*, large pitcher for filtering water.

س *s*, a sharp sibilant *s*: e.g. سن *sinn*, tooth; سنة *sānā*, year.

ش *š*, like *sh*: e.g. شمس *šāms*, sun.

ص *ṣ*, a sharp *s*: e.g. باص *baṣṣ*, he saw.

ض *ḍ*, a heavy explosive *d*: e.g. ضرب *ḍarab*, he struck; فضل *fadl*, goodness.

ط *t*, an emphatic *t*: e.g. طب *ṭibb*, medicine; خط *ḥaṭṭ*, line.

ظ *ḍ*, *z*, corresponds now to either *ز* or *ض*: e.g. عظيم *'azīm*, fine, grand; نظارة *naddāra*, spectacles.

ع, 'is a very difficult sound resembling nothing so much as a gurgling in the gullet caused by a sensation of choking. This gasping is produced by a forcible contraction of the muscles of the throat, and the ع with its vowel sounds like a suffocated attempt to pronounce *ga* or *gu*, with the result that only the vowel is heard, struggling as it were with a lump in the throat.' It therefore follows that it must have a vowel with it to make it capable of being pronounced: e.g. عين *'ēn*, eye; عند *'and*, at, near, with, 'chez.' After *i* and *u*, as with *h* and *ḥ*, a short vowel is inserted to carry the ': e.g. طلوع *ṭulūʿ* (sun-)rise; شنيع *šānīʿ*, detestable. If it stands at the end of a word after a consonant it also has a short *a* to make it pronounceable: e.g. ربع *rubʿ*, quarter; فرع *farʿ*, branch. Often before a consonant it is changed into *h*: e.g. سمعت *simīʿt*, I have heard (pronounced *simīḥt*); بتاعت (betāʿt) *betāḥt*, belonging to.

غ *g*, something like the French *r grasseyé*, or the *burr* of the

Northumbrian *r*, but rougher than either: e.g. شُغِل *šugl*, work; غير *ġēr*, without; بَلَغ *balag*, reach, become adult, ripen.

ف *f*, as in English: e.g. فقير *faqīr*, poor.

ق *q*, has three sounds in modern Egyptian Arabic:—

- (i) In Alexandria, in the Soudan, and among the peasants generally, it is sounded like *g*: e.g. قال *gāl*, he said; قرش *qirš*, piastre; سوق *sūg*, market.
- (ii) In the common speech of the towns it is pronounced like *alif* (*hamzā*): e.g. 'āl, 'irš; يقول *ye'ūl*, he says; *sū*.
- (iii) In places, especially among the Bedawīn, *q* has retained its proper sound, that is a sound like a *k*, produced very deep down in the throat, thus: qāl, qirš, yeqūl, sūq.

ك *k*, as in English: e.g. كلب *kālb*, dog; كتب *kātab*, he has written.

ل *l*, as in English: e.g. لعب *lāb*, game (play).

م *m*, as in English: e.g. مبلغ *māblaġ*, sum.

ن *n*, as in English: e.g. نار *nār*, fire; نور *nūr*, light. *n* before ب *b*, and ف *f*, is always pronounced like *m*: e.g. جنب *gamb*, side, beside; انفتح *imfātaḥ*, it has been opened.

ه *h*, a soft *h*, but always distinctly audible: e.g. هرب *hirib*, he fled, escaped; شهر *šahr*, month.

و *w*, as in English: e.g. ولد *wālad*, boy, child.

ي *y*, as in English; following a consonant at the end of a word it is pronounced like *i*: e.g. يوم *yōm*, day; مشي *maši*, walk.

## PRONUNCIATION OF THE VOWELS.

The vowels should be pronounced as given in the transliteration in this book, always bearing in mind that they have the Continental, and not the English values. Thus *a* is pronounced ah, *e* a, *i* ee; *ā* is, as in the German, nearly the English *a*. The consonants ا *alif*, و *wāw*, and ي *yē*, are sometimes the long vowels *ā*, *ū* (*ō*) and *ī* (*ē*). The consonants have a considerable effect on the actual pronunciation of the vowels. Thus *a* is pronounced as a broad *a* with *h*, *ḥ*, *ḫ*, *ġ*, *r* and *q*; whilst with the emphatic consonants (*q*



and *w* excepted) it somewhat resembles an *o*; the dentals (with the exception of *n*) and *b* and *f* cause it to be sounded nearly like *ä* or *e*.

The *i* is less influenced by its neighbouring consonants; *u* has a slight suspicion of *o* after *h*, *ḥ* and *g*.

We cannot here give all these nuances<sup>1</sup>: the following rule should be strictly observed.

In pronouncing Arabic the pronunciation of the consonants should be rigorously attended to, whereas the vowels need not be so carefully pronounced. The proper nuances of the latter will then be attained without much effort. The roots of Arabic words consist of consonants and not of vowels.

### HELP-VOWELS AND INTERMEDIARY VOWELS.

If a word end in two consonants and the following word begin with a consonant, a short intermediary vowel is attached to the first word: e. g. *kullē rāgil*, every man; *katāblē maktūb*, you have written a letter.

This interposition of a vowel also takes place before suffixes, and the negation-particle *š* (*še*): e. g. *katābtīnā*, you have written to us: *šuglūhum*, their work; *gambīnā*, beside us; *mā katābtīš*, you have not written; *darābtūkum*, I have hit you. (Further particulars are given in the chapters on Negation and the Suffixes.)

### THE SYLLABLE AND THE ACCENT.

Every syllable in Arabic begins with a consonant. If a syllable ends in a vowel it is called *open*, if in one or more consonants it is said to be *closed*. Thus in the word *فَيْل* *fī'il*, *fī* is an open syllable, *'il* a closed one.

There are three sorts of syllables.

(a) The *short*, open syllable, which ends in a short vowel: e. g. *fī* in *fī'il*; *ḍa* in *ḍarab*.

<sup>1</sup> Spitta Bey gives copious matter on the influence of the consonants on the pronunciation of the vowels in his Grammar.

(b) The *semi-long* syllable, which ends in either a long vowel or a diphthong, or else in a short vowel with a final consonant : e. g. *lá, lau, yá, 'il* in *fī'il, rab* in *ḍarab*.

(c) The *long* syllable, which ends either in a short vowel followed by two consonants, or in a long vowel with one final consonant : e. g. *'ilt* in *fī'ilt* ; *mār* in *ḥomār* ; *nār* ; *'id* in *sa'id*.

The *Accent* falls as follows :—

(i) On the *final* syllable if it is long : e. g. *kalām*, speech ; *gibāl*, mountains ; *ḍarābt*, you have struck ; *fihimt*, I understood.

(ii) On the *penultimate* syllable if the last is semi-long or short, but only if the penultimate syllable is itself semi-long or long : e. g. *katābnā*, we have written ; *moḥammad*, Mohammed ; *qālū* or *qālum*, they said ; *ḥdliš*, quite.

If the penultimate syllable is short, but the antepenultimate is long or semi-long (or the word altogether is only dissyllabic), the penultimate syllable has the accent : e. g. *yiktībū*, they write ; *muṣṭāfa*, Mustafa ; *meḥkāmā*, tribunal.

(iii) The *antepenultimate* syllable has the accent if neither of the two last has it. Further back than this the accent cannot be thrown. E. g. *ḍarabū*, they struck ; *šāgara*, tree ; *'arabī*, Arabic.

It should be observed that the conjugation-endings, the suffixes, and the negation-particle *š* affect the accent, since they form one syllabic group with the word to which they are attached : e. g. *ḍarab*, he has struck ; *ḍarābt*, I have struck ; *ḍarābnī*, he has struck me ; *ḍarabū*, they have struck ; *ḍarabūh*, they have struck him ; *māḍa-rabūš*, they have not struck ; *wáyā*, with ; *wayāya*, with me ; *kútub*, books ; *kutūbnā*, our books, &c.

For the purposes of accentuation the intermediary vowels are counted as short vowels ; they are capable of being accentuated themselves (in which case they become somewhat lengthened) : e. g. *'andīha*, with her ; *gambūhum*, beside them ; *ḍarabtnā*, you have struck us ; *rabbūnā*, Our Lord (instead of *rabbūnā*).

We give the proper accentuation of every word throughout the book.

If a short vowel has the accent it is indicated by an acute accent ' : e. g. *katābt*, you have written ; if in the same word long

vowels occur they have a horizontal line placed over them <sup>-</sup>: e. g. *ḍarābnā*, he has struck us.

If a long vowel has the accent it has the circumflex accent <sup>^</sup> over it: e. g. *qalīl*, few; *ḍarabūh*<sup>1</sup>, they have struck him; *šāfnā*, he has seen us.

Thus every vowel which has the accent bears either <sup>^</sup> or <sup>'</sup>.

## THE ROOTS AND FORMS OF ARABIC.

As we mentioned in treating the vowels, the meaning of words in Arabic depends on the consonants and not on the vowels. An Arabic root then does not consist of a syllable, but of a succession of consonants (usually three, occasionally more). The root of the words *kitāb*, book; *kātab*, write; *maktūb*, written, &c., thus consists of the three letters *ktb*; that of the words *moḥammed*, Mohammed, and *ḥamd*, praise, is *hmd*.

The Arabic language is formed of words derived from such roots.

The root *f'l* (فعل) serves as a pattern for the formation of the various forms in Arabic. Thus one says that the word *kitāb* has the form *fī'āl* (فِعال); the word *maktūb* the form *maf'ūl* (مَفْعُول); the word *'irif* the form *fī'il* (فِيعِل), &c.

We cannot here discuss at length Arabic forms, as it would take up too much space, and would only serve to perplex the beginner; but the student ought to understand what is meant when it is said, for instance, that the nominatives of the form *fā'il*, in the formation of the feminine, reject the *i* and shorten the *ā* into *a*: in fact that the feminine is *fā'le*.

<sup>1</sup> *h* as a suffix meaning 'him' is not pronounced, so that *ḍarabūh* they have struck him, and *ḍarabū* they have struck, are only distinguishable by the accent.

# GRAMMAR.

## LESSON I.

### THE ARTICLE AND THE GENITIVE.

The *Definite Article* is *el* (*al*) for all genders and numbers.

The *l* sound of the article is assimilated to any of the following sounds *t, d, r, z, s, š, ṣ, ḍ, ṭ, n*, and frequently also *g* and *k*: e.g. *eddār*, the house; *eššäms*, the sun; *essultān*, the Sultan (instead of *eldār, elšäms, &c.*); further *eggäbäl* or *elgäbäl*, the mountain; *ekkalūn* or *elkalūn*, the door-lock. The letters *t, d, r, z, s, š, ṣ, ḍ, ṭ, n* are called *solar* letters. After, or before a vowel, the vowel sound of the article is usually omitted: e.g. *ādi-rrāgil* (instead of *ādi-errāgil*), there is the man; *gāmi' lāzhar*, the El-Azhar mosque.

The *Indefinite Article* is either omitted altogether or else expressed by the numeral *wāḥid*, fem. *wāḥde* (sometimes *wāḥid* is used): e.g. *wāḥid rāgil*, a man; *wāḥde bint*, a girl.

The *Genitive*<sup>1</sup> is usually formed by the mere juxtaposition of the two substantives. If both substantives are definite, the first one loses its article: e.g. the man's house, *bēt errāgil*; the king's daughter, *bint elmālik*. In other cases the two stand without the article: e.g. *bēt rāgil*, a man's house; *bint mālik*, a king's daughter.

NOTE.—The formation of our compound substantives is brought about in this way by juxtaposition; attention, however, must be given as to whether the substantives have the definite article or the indefinite article: e.g. a wardrobe, *dūlāb hudūm*; the wardrobe, *dūlāb elhudūm*; a king's daughter, *bint mālik*; the king's daughter, *bint elmālik*.

<sup>1</sup> There no longer exists in modern Arabic any real declension. We shall learn the weak remnants from the classical language in the course of the lessons.

VOCABULARY.—*báb*, pl. *bibán*, gate, door<sup>1</sup>; *kálb*, pl. *kiláb*, dog; *bint*, pl. *banát*, girl, daughter; *muftáh*, pl. *mafátíh*, key; *ḥabíb*, pl. *aḥbáb*, friend, lover; *wālād*, pl. *wilád*, boy; 'and, with, *chez*; *quddám*, before (of place); 'and *elwālād*, with the boy; *quddám elbáb*, in front of the door.

### Exercises.

*wālād elḥabíb. elkálb<sup>2</sup> quddám eggenéne* (garden). *quddám báb eggenéne. (waḥde) genéne. báb genéne. báb eddūláb. bibán eggenéne. 'and<sup>e</sup> wālād elḥabíb. wilád elḥabíb. muftáh báb. muftáh elbáb. ḥabíb elwilád.*

Where (*fén* at the end of the sentence) (is) the key? In front of the garden gate. The children of the friends. The boy's friend. The garden gates. The dog is with the girl's friend. The man's boys. The friend's daughters. A door-key. The key of the door. The dog is in front of the house door (*báb elbét*). The garden is in front of the house (*bét*). The key of the wardrobe (*muftáh dūláb elhudúm*) is in front of the door.

## LESSON II.

### GENDER—THE GENITIVE WITH *betá'*.

There are two genders in Arabic, masculine and feminine. The masculine nouns have no peculiar distinguishing feature.

The following are of the *feminine* gender :—

- (i) Living female beings: 'umm, mother; *bint*, girl, daughter; *sultáne*, Sultana.
- (ii) Names of peoples, countries and places: *ingelíz*, English; *feransís*, French; *maṣr*, Egypt, Cairo; *eššám*, Syria; *dimyát*, Damietta; *bāríz*, Paris.
- (iii) The names of those parts of the human body which occur in duplicate: 'én, eye; *widn*, ear; *íd*, hand; *riḡl*, foot.

<sup>1</sup> For plurals and feminines see next few lessons.

<sup>2</sup> The present tense of the verb 'to be' is omitted in Arabic.

- (iv) All irregular (broken) plurals (see Lesson III). (If, however, these nouns denote living masculine beings, the same construction can be employed as in the case of regular plurals. See Lessons IV and XXIII.)
- (v) A number of words, such as: *bāḍān*, body; *baṭn*, belly; *dukkān*, shop, booth; *rūḥ*, spirit; *nās*, mankind, people (*monde*); *sāmā*, heaven; *šāms*, sun.
- (vi) Words ending in *a*, *ā*, *e* (in classical Arabic *ī*). This class of word, when followed by a suffix, or in combination to form a genitive, revives the original *t*: e.g. *genēnet elwālād*, the boy's garden; *genēnetī*, my garden; *qāṣabet ettāgīr*, the merchant's pipe (*qāṣabe*, a pipe).

NOTE.—These feminine substantives frequently reject the short vowel before the *t*, and at the same time shorten the long vowel of the penultimate syllable. In this case, however, the accent must not be changed (see Accentuation), but it remains on the original tonic-syllable: e.g. instead of *'ātabet elbēt*, the threshold of the house, *'ātabt elbēt* (but not *'atābt elbēt*).

Instead of simple juxtaposition to express the genitive, the word *betā'*, fem. *betā'et* (or *betāḥt*), pl. *butā'*, is often used, in which case both substantives have the article: e.g. *elkālb betā' errāgīl*, the man's dog; *elqāṣabe betā'et (betāḥt) ettāgīr*, the merchant's pipe; *elwilād butā' elḥabīb*, the friend's children.

VOCABULARY.—*hāt*, fem. *hātī*, pl. *hātū*, give! *yā*, Oh! (sign of vocative); *'andī* = I have (lit. with me, in sense of possession, *avoir chez* or *sur soi*); *'andak*, thou hast (masc.); *'andik*, thou hast (fem.); *'andoh*<sup>1</sup>, he has; *'andihā*, she has; *'andūhum*, they have; *rāgīl*, pl. *rigāl*, man; *mār'a*, pl. *nīsawān* or *nīswe*, wife, woman; *ṣāḥīb*, pl. *aṣḥāb*, friend, master, owner; *ṣāḥbe*, pl. *ṣaḥbāt*, friend (fem.); *'ēš*, bread; *ḥiṭṭet 'ēš*, a piece of bread.

### Exercises.

*'andī 'ēš. el 'ēš 'andī. hāt ḥiṭṭet<sup>2</sup> 'ēš. elwilād butā' enniswān. kilāb ḥabībī (of my friend). elkilāb butā' ḥabībī. elmār'a betā'et*

<sup>1</sup> The *h* of the suffixes *oh*, *uh* is very seldom pronounced.

<sup>2</sup> The Accusative does not differ from the Nominative.



*eṣṣāhib. 'ándoh hiṭṭet 'éš. wālād elmār'a. hāt qāṣabet errágil.*  
*'andúhum kiláb. errágil 'ándoh 'éš. elkālbē quddám 'átabt elbét.*  
*yá wālād hāt-lī (give me) qāṣabe. elbintē 'ándē ṣahbethā (her*  
*friend).*

Give me (*līye* or *lī*) a piece of bread. The men's wives. They have dogs (with them). The dog has (*elkālbē 'ándoh . . .*) a piece of bread. The woman's boys. The man is in front of the garden. The girl has the pipe (*elbintē 'andihā . . .*). The man in front of the garden has (*err . . . qud . . . egg . . . 'ándoh*) the knife (*essikkīne*). The dog is with the men. The dogs (are) in front of the threshold of the house. The girls are in front of their friend's (fem.) house.

### LESSON III.

#### FORMATION OF THE DUAL AND PLURAL.

The *Dual* is formed by the addition of the syllable *én* to the singular. Feminine substantives ending in *a*, *ā*, *e* insert a *t* at the same time : thus *'idén*, two hands ; *riglén*, two feet ; *erriglén*, both the feet ; *nōbatén*, twice (from *nōba*, a time) ; *šehrén*, two months ; *sā'alén*, two hours.

NOTE.—The dual should be made use of rather than the plural with *etnén* (two).

As far as the *Plural* is concerned a distinction is made between :

- (i) The outwardly formed, or *regular* plural,
- and (ii) The inwardly formed, irregular or *broken* plural (*Pluralis fractus*).

The *regular plural* may be used for either masculine or feminine substantives. The masculine plural is formed by the addition of the syllable *ín* to the singular. The feminine ending is *āt*.

*ín* is employed for a large number of substantives, but still oftener for adjectives : e.g. *naggār*, carpenter, pl. *naggārín* ; *fellāḥ*, peasant, pl. *fellāḥín* ; *ṭaiyib*, good, pl. *ṭaiyibín* ; *gālī*, dear (expensive), pl. *gālīyín*. (The plural of participles is formed in a similar manner ; vide Conjugation.)



The feminine substantives in *a*, *ä*, *e*, if they form their plural regularly, take *ât* as the termination: e.g. *ḥikāyā*, story, pl. *ḥikāyât*; *sā'a*, hour, pl. *sā'ât*; *ṭarabēze*, table, pl. *ṭarabēzât*.

Many other feminine substantives also form their plural in *ât*: e.g. *ḥarīm*, woman, pl. *ḥarīmât*; *sitt*, lady, pl. *sittât*.

Foreign words also frequently form their plural in *ât*, but as a rule insert a *w* before the termination: e.g. *bāšā*, pasha, pl. *bāšawât*; *āgā*, eunuch, pl. *āgāwât*; but *brins*, prince, pl. *brinsât*; *ḥawāga*, gentleman, Mr., pl. *ḥawāgât* (form of address to Europeans).

Names of relationships and grades of society, old and new borrowed words, also take *ât* in the plural: e.g. 'ab, father, pl. 'abahât; *ḥammām*, bath, pl. *ḥammāmât*; *gurnāl*, newspaper, pl. *gurnālât* (also *garānīl*).

Amongst words ending in *ī*, *ānī*, *āwī*, *gī* and *lī*, a plural form is often found in *īyā*, *īya*: e.g. *nemsāwī*, German, pl. *nemsāwīye*; *nūqālī*, fruit-seller, pl. *nūqālīyā*; 'arbāgī, driver, coachman, pl. 'arbagīyā.

The rules for the formation of the irregular plural cannot be given here, and if given would only perplex the beginner. The plural of every substantive in the Vocabularies has been given.

VOCABULARY.—*kitāb*, pl. *kūtub*, book; *medīne*, pl. *mūdun*, town; *ḥēme*, pl. *ḥīyam*, tent; *gābāl*, pl. *gibāl*, mountain; *ḥuṣān*, pl. *ḥēl*, horse; *yōm*, pl. 'īyām, day; 'aḥ<sup>1</sup>, pl. 'iḥwān, 'iḥwe, brother; *kebīr*, great, large; *zūgāiyar*, little, small; *ṭawīl*, pl. *ṭuwāl*, long; *kunt*, I was; *kunt*, thou wast; *kūntī* (fem.), thou wast; *kān*, he was; *kānet*, she was; *kūnnā*, we were; *kūntū*, ye were; *kānū*, they were.

The *Comparative* is expressed by 'an with the positive: *kebīr* 'an, greater than.

A *Question*, especially a direct one, is usually expressed by an interrogative tone only: e.g. *elwālād kán hēne?* Was the boy here?

*Wārā*, behind; *quṣṣād*, opposite; *we*, and (closely connected with the word following; it elides its vowel before another vowel: e.g. *wīḥne*, and we); *fī*, in (*el* loses its vowel after *fī*, and *ī* is

<sup>1</sup> In composition 'aḥā: e.g. 'aḥāye, my brother; 'aḥā elwālād, the boy's brother.

shortened into *i*: e.g. *filḥárb*, in the war; *figgenéne*, in the garden; *fiṭṭarabéze*, in the table); *embáreh*, yesterday.

### Exercises.

*elwālad fi'lbét. ána* (I) *kúntē filmedíne. kúnnā*<sup>1</sup> *fí genénet elḥawāga. wālad elbāša ṭawíl* (taller) 'an *elwālad, éllī šufnáḥ* (whom we saw) *embáreh. šuft* (I saw) *errāgilén. elbāšawát kánū filmedíne. kúntē quṣṣád báb elbét embáreh. húwe* (he is) *nemsáwī. ihne* (we are) *nemsáwīye. elkiláb kánū fí bét elbāša. bint elḥawāga kánet figgenéne betá'et el'ágā. elnuqalíye kánū filbét. aḥū* 'lbint *kán embáreh fí bét eṭṭágir. bét elbāša kebír* 'an *bét el'ágā. bint elmár'a kánet fén?* *kánet filbét* (in the house, at home).

The gates of the town. We were in the pasha's gardens (*genā'in*). The boy and (*we*) the brother of the tall man (*errāgil eṭṭawíl*) were in Cairo (*fí maṣr*). I (*ána*) am a German. The gentlemen are French. Were you in the eunuch's house? Behind the pasha's garden. In front of Mr. Ahmed's house. Where are the boy's books? They are (*hum*) behind the wardrobe. The garden is opposite the house. The prince and the pasha (*welbāša*). The fruit-sellers and the cab-drivers of Cairo.

## LESSON IV.

### THE ADJECTIVE—AGREEMENT OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE SUBSTANTIVE.

The *Feminine* of most adjectives is formed by the addition of *e* or *a* to the masculine form: e.g. *kebír*, great, large, fem. *kebíre*; *kūwáiyis*, pretty, nice, fem. *kūwáiyíse*. Adjectives denoting colours, or bodily defects, form their feminine by internal changes of the consonants: e.g. *áḥmar*, red, fem. *ḥámrrā*; *ábyaḍ*, white, fem. *béḍa*; *āma*, blind, fem. *āmyā*.

<sup>1</sup> In Arabic, as in many other languages, the personal pronouns I, thou, he, &c., may be left out, if no ambiguity arises therefrom.

A dual is not formed in the case of adjectives. Substantives in the dual take a plural adjective.

Most adjectives form the *Plural* in *ín*, which ending serves for both masculine and feminine.

NOTE.—The adjectives mentioned above also form an irregular plural, as also do a number of other adjectives: e. g. *ḥumr*, pl. of *áhmar*; *bíḍ*, pl. of *ábyaḍ*; *kubár*, pl. of *kebír*; *ṭuwál*, pl. of *ṭawíl*.

The adjective always follows its substantive, and in the case where the substantive has the definite article it takes the article too: e. g. a good boy, *wālād ṭáiyib*; the good boy, *elwālād eṭṭáiyib*.

NOTE.—If a pronominal suffix is attached to a substantive the latter at once becomes definite, and the article must be used with its qualifying adjective: e. g. his large house, *bétoh elkebír*; my small boy, *wālādī ezzūgáiyar*.

The following points should be noted in the agreement of substantives and adjectives in number and gender:—

1. In the singular, adjectives always agree in gender with their substantives: e. g. *bét kebír*, a large house; *elmár'a eṭṭáiyibe*, the good woman; *'én sódā*, a black eye (fem. of *iswid*, black).
2. For the dual see above.
3. In the plural the form of the adjective depends on whether the plural is regular or irregular.

The regular plural is always followed by the plural of the adjective: e. g. *muslimán ṣāliḥín*, pious Moslems; *bāšawát 'uzám*, powerful pashas; *ḥikāyāt kūwaiyisín*, pretty stories.

The irregular plural, if denoting persons, also has the adjective in the plural: *mašá'ih fúḍalā*, honourable sheikhs; *rigál ṭuwál*, tall men. If the plural is not personal, the adjective may be either in the feminine singular or in the plural: *'iyún sódā* or *súd*, black eyes; *qúlāl malyānín* or *malyāne*, filled water-bottles.

The adjective used as a *predicate* agrees with its substantive both in number and gender; however, irregular plurals even in this case may take the feminine singular of the adjective: *errágil ṭáiyib*, the man is good; *elmár'a ṭáiyibe*, the woman is good; *eggárye*

*mugláhíde*, the slave-girl is industrious; *errigál ʔaiyibín* or *ʔaiyíbe*, the men are good.

The following are some of the most employed adjectives:—

MASC. SING.	ENGLISH.	FEM. SING.	PLURAL.
<i>kebír</i>	large	<i>kebíre</i>	<i>kubár</i>
<i>ʔawíl</i>	long, tall	<i>ʔawíle</i>	<i>ʔuwál</i>
<i>qūšáiyar</i>	short	<i>qūšaiyára</i>	<i>qušár</i>
<i>šūgáiyar</i>	little	<i>šūgaiyára</i>	<i>šugár</i> or <i>šūgaiyarín</i>
<i>ʔaiyib</i>	good	<i>ʔaiyíbe</i>	<i>ʔaiyibín</i>
<i>mālīh</i>	nice	<i>mālīhe</i>	<i>miláhe</i>
<i>ábyaḍ</i>	white	<i>béḍā</i>	<i>bíḍ</i>
<i>ásfar</i>	yellow	<i>šáfrā</i>	<i>šufr</i>
<i>áhmar</i>	red	<i>hámrá</i>	<i>humr</i>
<i>ásmar</i>	brown	<i>sámrá</i>	<i>sumr</i>
<i>áhḍar</i>	green	<i>hádṛā</i>	<i>huḍr</i>
<i>ázraq</i>	blue	<i>zárqā</i>	<i>zurq.</i>

VOCABULARY.—*énhū*, fem. *énhī*, pl. *énhum*, who, which? *enhú*, fem. *enhī*, pl. *enhúm*, who, which? (standing alone); *ʔaiyib*, *aḥsánt*, good! allright! *min fáḍlak*, be so good, please.

### Exercises.

*essámā* (sky) *zárqā*. *eššāms kebíre qáwī* (very). *errágil-dā* (this man) *ʔawíl ketír* (very). *énhū wālād kán héne* (here)? *wālād eššūgáiyar*. *híye* (she) *mar'a ʔaiyíbe*. *bāšawát ʔaiyibín*. *e'agāwát dól* (these) *hum* (they are) *rigál ʔuwál*. *eggibál dól kwayiýse* (or *kwayiýisín* = beautiful). *loh* (he has) *'iyán zárqā* (or *zurq*). *min fáḍlak hát qásabe*. *ezzáhre di* (this flower) *hámrá*. *ʔaiyib, rúh* (go) *bét<sup>1</sup> elbāšā*. *ezzáhre-di lihā* (it has) *rīḥa* (smell) *ʔaiyíbe*. *šúfte* (I saw) *rāgilén ʔuwál fí bet elhawága wēbazūnn* (and I think) *hum ḥarāmíye* (pl. of *ḥarāmi*, thief). *ezzuhúr* (pl. of *záhre*) *eššáfrā dól kūwaiyisín*.

These flowers are beautiful. The gentlemen are good. Which

<sup>1</sup> 'to' can be left out here.

girl was here? She is<sup>1</sup> a good girl. The thieves are in the prison (*ḥabshāne*). We were in the eunuch's garden. These girls are pretty. The pasha's boys are big. Mr. Ali's house is very big; it (*ḥúwa*) is in the town. These flowers have (*lúhum*) a good smell. The girl's two little hands are pretty. The flowers of this garden (*eggenéne di*) are red and blue.

## LESSON V.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

For the *Comparative* of an adjective the form *áf'al* is employed: i. e. an *a* is prefixed to the positive, the vowel between the first and second radicals is dropped, and an *a* is introduced between the second and third radicals (*w* as a first radical changes into *u* and forms the diphthong *au*): e. g.

great, <i>kebír</i>	greater, <i>ákbar</i>
small, <i>ṣūḡáiyar</i>	smaller, <i>áṣḡar</i>
pretty, <i>kūwáiyis</i>	prettier, <i>ákwas</i>
cheap, <i>rahís</i>	cheaper, <i>árḥaṣ</i>
dear, <i>ḡálī</i>	dearer, <i>áḡlā</i>
ugly, <i>wíḥiṣ</i>	uglier, <i>áuḥaṣ</i>

as the comparative of *ṭáiyīb*, good, *áḥsan* is used (from the old form *ḥásan*).

After the comparative 'than' is translated by *min*; it is, however, more common to express comparison by the use of the positive with 'an: for example *elkālḇ áṣḡar min elḥuṣān* or *elkālḇ ṣūḡáiyar 'an elḥuṣān*, the dog is smaller than the horse.

In the case of adjectives which have more than three radicals *áktar* or *zīyáde* (more) is added to the positive to express the comparative.

If the comparative is preceded by the definite article, or is

<sup>1</sup> We shall not in future put the present tense of the verb 'to be' in brackets; it is to be omitted in translation.

followed by a genitive or a suffix, it becomes *Superlative*: e.g. *húwa el'ákbar*, he is the greatest; *húwa 'akbárum*, he is the greatest of them; *húwa 'ákbar rigál elbálád*, he is the greatest of the men of the country.

The *Personal Pronouns* are (the forms in brackets are rarer):—

<i>ána</i> , I	<i>ihna</i> ( <i>ihne</i> , <i>āhne</i> ), we
<i>inte</i> ( <i>énte</i> ), thou (masc.)	<i>intū</i> ( <i>éntū</i> , <i>intum</i> ), you
<i>éntī</i> ( <i>intī</i> ), thou (fem.)	
<i>húwa</i> , he	<i>hum</i> ( <i>húma</i> ), they.
<i>hīye</i> , she	

The following *Suffixes* are made use of to express possession (instead of possessive pronouns):—

<i>ī</i> , my, after vowels <i>yā</i> , <i>yā</i> .
<i>ak</i> , thy, after vowels <i>k</i> .
<i>ik</i> , thy (fem.), after vowels <i>ki</i> , <i>kī</i> .
<i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>oh</i> , <i>uh</i> <sup>1</sup> , his, after vowels <i>h</i> .
<i>hā</i> , her.
<i>na</i> , <i>nā</i> , our.
<i>kum</i> , <i>kū</i> , your.
<i>hum</i> , their.

Points to notice about these suffixes:

1. That these suffixes influence the accent when they begin with a consonant: e.g. *hāgar*, stone; *hāgarī*, my stone; but *hagárhā*; *hagárum*; *gūna*, song; *gūnāyā*; *gūnāk*; *gūnāh*; *qatalū*, they killed; but *qatalūh*, they killed him. Since the *h* of the suffix is mute in this case, the accent alone decides the meaning.
2. That in the case of a word ending in two consonants a vowel must be placed before the suffix (if this latter begin with a consonant) for the sake of euphony: this vowel receives the accent, which frequently converts it into a long vowel: e.g. *šugl*, work, business; *šuglīhā*; *šuglīnā*; *šuglūrum*; *šuglūhum*<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> The *h* of both these suffixes is almost always mute.

<sup>2</sup> Thus *i* (or *a*) before *hā*, *i* before *nā*, and *u* before *kum* or *hum*.



These suffixes can also be appended to prepositions: e. g. 'ándī, with me; 'andīhā, with her; quddāmoh, before him; warāhum, behind them; tahtūkum, below you.

VOCABULARY.—*fīh*, *fī*, there is, there are (*il y a*): e. g. *fīh mōiye fī'lkubbāye di?* Is there any water in this glass? (*Y a-t-il de l'eau dans ce verre?*); *mā fīhš*, *mā fīš*, there is not any (*il n'y a pas*); *ab* (compounded with the suffixes *abū*), pl. 'abahāt, father; *aḥ* (compounded with the suffixes *aḥū*), pl. 'iḥwān, brother; *uḥt*, pl. *aḥawāt*, sister; *insān*, pl. *nās*, man, mankind, people (*monde*); 'īd, pl. 'ayādī, hand; *yóm*, pl. 'iyām, day; šāfa, šīffe, pl. šafā'if, lip; *sānā*, pl. *sanawāt* or *sinīn*, year; *mār'a*, pl. *nīswān*, *nīswe*, woman; *baḥr*, pl. *biḥār*, sea, the Nile; *nahr*, pl. *anhār*, river; *da*, *dā*, fem. *dī*, pl. *dól*, this, these (placed after the substantive with the article: e. g. *ennāhr dā*, this river; *el 'ayādī dól*, these hands; it often combines with the substantive to form one tonic group, in which the original accent is changed: e. g. *elmirāya*, the mirror; *elmirāyā-di*, this mirror); *dī'lwāqt*, *dilwāqtē*, now; *fēn?* where? (mostly placed at end of sentence).

### Exercises.

*aḥawātkum fēn?* *errāgil-dā aṭwal min aḥūya*<sup>1</sup>. *ennāhr-dā āšgar min ennīl* (the Nile). *fīh gāmi* (mosque) *filbālād da?* *wāllādī 'andak yā ḥawāga?* *lā* (no), *hūwa muš* (not) 'ándī, *hūwa 'and 'uḥū*. *min* (of) *énhī qabīle* (tribe) *inte?* *dā kitābī āna* (this is my book). *dā muš kitābak inte*, *dā kitāboh hūwa*. *aḥūh fēn?* *elmirāya fēn?* *abūk fēn?* *hūwa dilwāqtē 'andī*. *fīh nās fī'lbēt dā?* *lā*, *mā-fīš*. *ennāhr wārā elbālād* (place, town). *dilwāqt ennāhr warānā*.

Of what tribe is this man? My book (is lying) before you on the table ('aṭṭarabēze contracted for 'ala eṭṭarabēze). This river is the largest of the rivers of this country (bālād). That is your (sing.) dog (*dā kēlbak inte*). The mountain is before us. Is there a river opposite us? (*fīh nahr . . .*). My brother was in the largest garden of the town yesterday. Where is his father? He

<sup>1</sup> *aḥ(ū)* with the suffixes: *aḥūyā*; *aḥūk*; *aḥūh*; *aḥūhā*; *aḥūnā*; *aḥūkum*; *aḥūhum*. Similarly *ab(ū)*; *abūyā*; *abūk*; *abūh*, &c.

is in their house now. There are no mountains in this country. Give us *our* knives, not *your* knives. Where is your house? Our house is opposite your brother's garden. Are there people inside this mosque? (*gāmi*). My father is in Cairo (*fī maṣr*) at present. The gardens are behind the town.

## LESSON VI.

### THE SUFFIX — 'an — 'ala — lī — INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

If a suffix beginning with a consonant is joined to a word which ends in a consonant preceded by a long vowel, the long vowel is shortened: e.g. *dūlābī*, *dūlābak*, but *dūlābhā*, *dūlābkum*; *šāfak*, he saw thee, but *šāfnā*, *šāfkum*, *šāfhum*, he saw us, you, them.

On appending the suffixes *ī*, *ak*, *ik*, *oh* the form *fā'il* loses its *i* and also generally shortens the *a*: e.g. *hātīr*, wish; *hātrak* or *hātrak*, thy wish; *šāhib*, friend; *šāhboh* or *šāhboh*, his friend.

NOTE.—The same changes take place also when a feminine is formed from the *fā'il* form: e.g. *šāhib*, friend, master; *šahbe* (fem.); *'ālim*, wise man; *'ālme* (fem.), singing-girl.

The *t* of the feminine substantives in *a*, *ā*, *e* reappears before these suffixes, in which case, as above, the short vowel before the *t* is rejected, and frequently a long vowel in the penultimate syllable is shortened: e.g. *hāga*, a thing; *hāgtak* or *hāgtak*; but *šahbēlak*, thy mistress (on account of the number of consonants).

Many prepositions undergo a slight modification when followed by suffixes. *'an*, of, from, and *min*, from, double the *n* before suffixes commencing with a vowel: *'ānnī*; *mīnnī*; *'ānnak*; *mīnnik*. *'āla*, upon, over, becomes *'alē*: e.g. *'alēya*; *'alēk*; *'alēh*; *'alēna*; *'alēkum*; *'alēhum*.

*lī*, for, to, forms *līye*, for, to me; *lak* (fem. *lik*); *loh* (*luh*); *līhā*; *līnā* (*līnā*); *lūkum*; *lūhum*. These forms of *lī* also do duty for the English 'have' in the sense of possession: I have a house, *līye bēt*<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Kān līye*, *kān lak*, *kān loh*, *kānū līye*, &c., I had, thou hadst, &c. *yekān*



'That, those' is *díkhā*, *dúkhā* (*dukháwa*), fem. *díkhā* (*dikháya*), pl. *dukhámma*.

If *da*, *dí*, *díkhā*, *dól*, &c., precede the substantive, 'is' or 'are' must be supplied: e.g. *errágil dā*, this man; *errágil díkha*, that man; but *dā rágil*, this is a man; *dā errágil*, this is the man; *díkhā 'lbint*, that is the girl (who, &c. . .).

*ahó*, fem. *ahí*, pl. *ahóm*, there he is, she is, they are! (*le*, *la*, *les voilà*); *ādí*, look there! combines with the pronominal suffixes in the following manner: *ādínī*, see, here I am; *ādínte*, there you are; *ādíhnā*; *ādintū*, &c.

*Interrogative Pronouns* are *mín*, who? *é* or *éš*, what? (*mín* and *é* are very often placed at the end of the sentence): e.g. *elḥawága di mín?* who is this gentleman? *'áuz mínñī é?* what do you want from me?

'He who' (substantival) is *élli* or *mín*: e.g. *élli* (or *mín*) *kán héne*, he who was here.

Each, every, *kúllē mín*: e.g. every one who wants anything from me, *kúllī mín 'áuz šé mínñī*.

The one that, *élli*: what I want to tell you, *élli bíddī baqúl lak*.

'Whoever, whatever' is *ay*: e.g. *lī 'ay sábab kán*, whatever the reason may be; *ay ḥága kán*, whatever it may be.

The reflexive pronoun is treated under the verb.

The indefinite pronouns are given in the course of the lessons.

VOCABULARY.—*baḍá'a*, pl. *baḍá'i'*, wares, goods; *bálād*, pl. *bilád*, village; *šéḥ elbálād*, pl. *šiyúḥ elbálād*, head man of the village, sheikh; *wālidén*, parents; *farš*, sofa; *lám̄ba*, lamp; *seggáde*, pl. *seggíd*, carpet; *taḥt*, under, below; *fóq*, upper, above; *wárā*, behind; *kull* (with singular), each, every; *kull* (with plural and article), all, every; *rāḥ*<sup>1</sup>, he went; *daḥal*<sup>1</sup>, he entered; *sáfir*<sup>1</sup>, he travelled; *mát*, he died (of = *mín*); *ḥóf*, fear; *ána*, *ínte*, *húwa sákin*, I live (or inhabit), thou livest, he lives.

*līye*, *yekún lak*, *yekún loh*, I shall have, thou wilt have, &c. E.g. *līye kán bēt fibálād dí*, I had a house in this place.

<sup>1</sup> 'To, in, into' may be omitted after verbs of motion.

## Exercises.

*esseggáde taḥt el-fárš. ḥoṭṭ (place, put) ellámba 'aṭṭarabéze. ána sákin filbét dā. elbaḏḏ'ī dól min fén? má kúntiṣ (I was not) filbét elléládī. háwa sákin filbét betá' eṣṣéḥ. šéḥ elbālād māt min ḥóḥ. mín háwa, éllī kán héne? kull errigál 'and eṣṣéḥ. dā šéḥ bālādna. wālídénak fén? dāḥal bét elbāša. sáfir elmaṣr. errágil éllī sáfir embáreḥ aḥúye. elḥawāgát dól mín? ahó már-ḥaba! ahóm! kánū fén temélli? adínī (here I am) rigī' (I have returned) min sáfarī (my journey).*

Each man entered the house of the village sheikh. Put (*ḥoṭṭ*) the carpet under the sofa. These goods are from here, and those are from Cairo. Yesterday my brother set off (for) Syria (*bilád eṣṣám*). Where are my parents? Is this man your village sheikh? He died of fright. Where do you live? I live in that house. Where is the house of the head of the village? It is opposite us. He went to the merchant's house. Did he enter the house? He lives in my house. Look, there he is! he came back from his journey yesterday (he came back = *rigī'*).

## LESSON VII.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *éllī*—NUMERALS FROM I—IC.

The most frequently used *Relative Pronoun* is *éllī*, who, which. Distinction must be made in relative clauses if the substantive, to which the relative refers, is definite or indefinite. If the substantive is indefinite the relative is simply left out: e.g. *rágil, kán héne*, a man who was here. If, however, the substantive is definite (so made by the article, pronominal suffix or genitive) the relative clause is introduced by *éllī*: e.g. the boy who was in my garden, *elwālād éllī kán fī genénetī*; the merchant's house which is opposite our house, *bét ettágir éllī quṣṣád elbét betá'nā*. (For this method of expressing possession see Lesson II and below.)

If the relative pronoun is not the nominative, or is governed by a preposition, the oblique case is rendered by a suffix which

is appended to the verb or to the preposition<sup>1</sup>: e.g. the house which he has seen, *elbēt elli šáfoh*; a country of which I have heard, *bālād ana simī't 'annoh*; the doctor whom I saw, *elḥakīm elli šúfloh*; the matter of which we have spoken, *el'amr elli kallimnā fih* (*kállim fī*, to speak about something).

The possessive pronouns can also be expressed by the genitival particle *betā'* (= belonging to), and the corresponding suffix: e.g. *elbēt betā'ī*, my house; *elwālād betā'ak*, your boy; *elmár'a betā'etoh*, his wife; *elbiyút butū'nā*, our houses; *elḥéme betā'ethum*, their tent.

The Numerals from 1-10 run as follows:—

1, 1	<i>wáḥid</i> , fem. <i>wáḥdä</i>
2, ٢	<i>etnén</i> , <i>itnén</i>
3, ٣	<i>telát</i> , <i>telátä</i>
4, ٤, ١٠	<i>árba'</i> , <i>arbá'a</i> , <i>arbáht</i>
5, ٥	<i>ḥámas</i> , <i>ḥámsä</i> , <i>ḥamást</i>
6, ٦	<i>sitt</i> , <i>sittä</i>
7, ٧	<i>sab'</i> , <i>sáb'a</i> , <i>sáb'at</i>
8, ٨	<i>temányä</i> , <i>táman</i> , <i>támant</i>
9, ٩	<i>tís'a</i> , <i>tís'at</i>
10, ١٠	<i>'āšara</i> , <i>'āšarat</i>
0, ٠	<i>šifr</i> .

*wáḥid*, *wáḥdä* also serves as the indefinite article, in which case it is placed before the substantive; placed after the substantive it means the numeral *one*: e.g. *wáḥid rágil*, a man, but *rágil wáḥid*, one man.

For the formation of the dual see Lesson III. After the numerals from 2-10 the substantive is in the plural.

The forms are used indiscriminately; before a vowel, however, a form ending in a consonant is usually employed: e.g. *sitle níswe*, six women; *támant ágrife*, eight loaves of bread; *etnén wilád* (better *wälädén*), two boys.

<sup>1</sup> The Accusative of the personal pronouns is the same as the suffixes given in Lesson V, with the single exception of the 1st pers. sing., of which the accusative is *nī*: e.g. *garáḥnī*, he has wounded me; *šáfak*, he has seen you. To lay special stress on the accusative the full form of the personal pronoun may be added: e.g. *garáḥnī ana*; *šáfak inte*.

VOCABULARY.—*gār*, pl. *girān*, neighbour; *sikke*, pl. *sīkak*, street; *šágare*, pl. *ašgār*, and *šagarát*, tree; *kás*, pl. *kasát*, cup, goblet; *fiṅgān*, pl. *fenāḡīn*, cup; *qáhwe*, coffee; *móiyē*, water; *móiyē ḥálwe*, sweet water; *kubbāye*, pl. *kubbāyāt*, glass, tumbler; *šāḥīb*, he accompanied; *gárah*, he wounded; *šúfnā*, we have seen; *kátab*, he wrote; *ištára*, he bought; *zūḡáiyar* (*šūḡáiyar*) *elqáme*, small in stature; *filḥáre*, in the street; *'ála kísoh*, at his expense; *lākin*, *welákin*, but, however.

### Exercises.

*ištára 'ála kísoh elkitáb ellī gáboh* (*gáb* = he brought) *liḡgār* (to the neighbour). *hát lī* (give me) *fiṅgān qáhwe ao* (or) *kubbāyet móiyē*. *elwālād wa'lbínt kánū filbét ellī šúftoh* (*šuft* = you have seen) *embáreh*. *húwa zūḡáiyar elqáme*, *lākin 'áqlōh* (his mind, intellect) *ṭáiyib ketír*. *šāḥíbni kull ellélā*. *šuftē* (I saw) *rágil dáḡal bét gárnā*. *šírīb* (he drank) *sítte fenāḡīn qáhwe weteláta kubbāyāt móiyē*. *fíh šagaratén teláta* (2 or 3 trees) *filḥárä di*. *fí 'ódeti* (my room) *fí seggádä taḥtē kullī farš*. *gárah wáḥid rágil filbālād*, *ellī quṣṣád eggābāl*. *hát línā* (give us) *fiṅgānēn qáhwe*. *šúfnā embáreh gená'in butú'oh*.

Give me a glass of water. We have seen our village sheikh (-*nā* appended to *bālād*) in the coffee-house (*qáhwe*, pl. *qaháwī*). There are five streets in this village. Six women. Ten cups of coffee. Five glasses of water. Three brothers. He wrote the letter (*gawáb*) which you have read (*ellī qarétōh*). Is there (*fíh*) sweet water in this lake (*beḥéra*)? I have seen (*šúftōh*) how he wrote the letter. I was in my neighbour's house, but he was in the mosque. He has hurt (*gárah*) both his hands (*idénōh*). Give these cups! He has kept me company the whole day (all day long = *úl ennahár*). I have (*liye*) two sofas in my room. Where is the landlord of the coffee-house? He is in the garden.

## LESSON VIII.

## NUMERALS FROM 11 UPWARDS.

The Numerals from 11 upwards are :—

11	<i>ḥaddāšar</i>	400	<i>rub'ēmīyā</i>
12	<i>etnāšar</i>	500	<i>ḥumsēmīyā</i>
13	<i>telatāšar</i>	600	<i>suttēmīyā</i>
14	<i>arbaḥtāšar</i>	700	<i>sub'ēmīyā</i>
15	<i>ḥamastāšar</i>	800	<i>tumnēmīyā</i>
16	<i>sittāšar</i>	900	<i>tus'ēmīyā</i>
17	<i>saḇ'atāšar</i>	1,000	<i>alf, elf</i> (pl. <i>ālāf</i> )
18	<i>temantāšar</i>	2,000	<i>elfén</i>
19	<i>tiš'atāšar</i>	3,000	<i>telātālāf</i>
20	<i>'ešrín</i>	4,000	<i>arbaḥtālāf</i>
21	<i>wāḥid we'ešrín</i>	5,000	<i>ḥamastālāf</i>
30	<i>telātín</i>	6,000	<i>sittālāf</i>
40	<i>arba'ín</i>	7,000	<i>saḇ'atālāf</i>
50	<i>ḥamsín</i>	8,000	<i>temantālāf</i>
60	<i>sittín</i>	9,000	<i>tiš'atālāf</i>
70	<i>saḇ'ín</i>	10,000	<i>'ašartālāf</i>
80	<i>lamānín</i>	11,000	<i>ḥaddāšar elf</i>
90	<i>tiš'ín</i>	12,000	<i>itnāšar elf</i>
100	<i>mīya, mīt</i>	100,000	<i>mīt elf</i>
200	<i>mīlén</i>	1,000,000	<i>milyón, milyún.</i>
300	<i>tullēmīya (tult mīt)</i>		

The numerals compounded of tens and units are formed by prefixing the units to the tens and uniting them by the conjunction *wa* (and): e.g. *arbā'a we'ešrín*, 24; *ḥámse wetelātín*, 35; *etnén we'arba'ín elf suttēmīya telāta we'arba'ín*, 42,643.

From 11 upwards the numerals have the singular of the substantive after them: thus *ḥaddāšar elf* and not *ālāf*. An adjective which qualifies a substantive following a plural numeral must, however, always be in the plural: e.g. twenty poor men, *ešrín naḥs fúqarā* (pl. of *faqír*, poor).

VOCABULARY.—*dór*, pl. *adwár*, story, floor; *sállim*, pl. *salálim*, steps, stairs; *'óða*, pl. *'uwað*, room; *qabw*, pl. *aqbíye*, cellar; *saḥ*, pl. *suḥúh*, roof; *béíd*, pl. *bū'adā*, distant (from = 'an); *fōqānī*, upper; *taḥtānī*, lower; *barrānī*, outer; *guwānī*, inner; *iḥna saknín*, we inhabit; *arúh*, I go (to, &c., can be omitted); *lāzīmī arúh*, *asáfir*, *aštíri*, I must go, go away (travel), buy; *gamb*, beside; *qabl*, before (time); *ḥārig*, outside, external; *wuṣṭ*, in the middle (*fí wuṣṭ*); *min 'and*, from (*de chez*): e.g. *gá min 'and 'aḥúh*, he came from his brother's (*il venait de chez son frère*); *búkra*, to-morrow; *búkra bédri*, to-morrow morning (early to-morrow).

### Exercises.

*iḥna saknín fiddór elfoqānī wáya wiládnä. šuṣṭ etnášar rágil fil'óda di. 'aḥúyā gá min 'andē gároḥ. lāzīmī (I require) 'ódatén gamb (beside) 'óða elḥawaga éllī gá embáreh. lāzīmī aštíri elbét dā. loh 'óða fiddór ettaḥtānī. búkra bādri asáfir eliskenderíye (Alexandria). fíh etnášar rágil agníye (pl. of gānī, rich) ketír filmedíne di. dā séllim essaḥ. elyóm loh arbā'a wē'ešrín sá'a. kúntē 'and aḥúya múddet<sup>1</sup> telátā sāt. bēti loh arbáht adwár. etnén wē'arbā'in elf suttēmíyā ḥámsa wētis'in. sītā wē sab'in elf tuttēmíyā arbā'a wētamānín. iḥna saknín fí wuṣṭ elbālād.*

27. 365. 2,534. 28. 11,560. 16. 15. 52.

I must go home (*bēti* or *libēti*, to my house). He lives outside the town. Where must you go to (*lāzim tesáfir fén*)? I must go to Constantinople (*stambál*). He came from his father's. He lives in the lower story of my house. Who is this man? This is a very rich man; he owns (*loh*) three houses in the middle of the town. She was in the cellar for a space of six hours (see Note 1 below). My house has a cellar, two stories with (*bi*) twelve rooms and a garden. To-morrow morning I must go to my neighbour's. Twelve fine horses. Twenty blue flowers. Fifteen tall (*ṭawíl*, pl. *ṭuwál*) lads (*wālād*).

<sup>1</sup> *múddet* meaning a space of time is often employed in such expressions: here 'for the space of three hours.'

## LESSON IX.

## ORDINAL NUMERALS—FRACTIONS.

The *Ordinal Numerals* from 1st—10th are :—

1st	<i>áuwal</i> , fem. <i>auwálā</i> ( <i>auwilt</i> ), pl. <i>auwalāniyīn</i> (also <i>auwalānī</i> , fem. <i>auwalāniye</i> )
2nd	<i>tānī</i> , fem. <i>tānye</i>
3rd	<i>tálit</i> , fem. <i>táltā</i>
4th	<i>rābī</i> *, fem. <i>rāb'a</i>
5th	<i>ḥāmis</i> , fem. <i>ḥāmsā</i>
6th	<i>sādis</i> , fem. <i>sādsa</i>
7th	<i>sābī</i> *, fem. <i>sāb'a</i>
8th	<i>tāmin</i> , fem. <i>tāmnā</i>
9th	<i>tāsi</i> *, fem. <i>tās'a</i>
10th	<i>'āšir</i> , fem. <i>'āšra</i> .

For the remaining ordinal numerals one employs the cardinal numerals with the definite article : e.g. the twentieth regiment, *eḥ'aláy eḥ'ešrīn*. From twentieth upwards the compound ordinals are formed of the unit ordinal combined with the higher cardinal numeral : e.g. the twenty-third, *eḥ'tálit we'ešrīn* ; the forty-seventh, *essābī\* we'arba'in*.

## FRACTIONS.

$\frac{1}{2}$	<i>nuṣṣ</i>	pl.	<i>anṣāṣ</i>
$\frac{1}{3}$	<i>tult</i>	„	<i>atlát</i>
$\frac{1}{4}$	<i>rub'</i>	„	<i>arbá'</i>
$\frac{1}{5}$	<i>ḥums</i>	„	<i>aḥmās</i>
$\frac{1}{6}$	<i>suds</i>	„	<i>asdās</i>
$\frac{1}{7}$	<i>suḥ'</i>	„	<i>asbá'</i>
$\frac{1}{8}$	<i>tumn</i>	„	<i>atmán</i>
$\frac{1}{9}$	<i>tus'</i>	„	<i>atsá'</i>
$\frac{1}{10}$	<i>'āšr</i>	„	<i>a'šār</i>
$\frac{2}{3}$	<i>tillén</i> .		

If the denominator of a fraction is greater than 10 recourse must



be had to the word *gúz'*, pl. *agzá'*, part: e. g.  $\frac{1}{12}$  *gúz' min etnāšar*;  $\frac{4}{30}$  *arbā'a agzá' min telātīn*.

One by one, two by two, &c., are rendered simply by repetition: e. g. *wāḥid wāḥid*, one by one; they came by two's, *gum etnén etnén*, or *etnén bi'etnén*; *āuwul bāuwul*, one after the other.

Once, twice, &c., are translated *márra wāḥde*, *marratén*, *talāt marrát*, &c. (*nóba* and *dáf'a* have the same meaning as *márra*).

VOCABULARY.—*rás*, pl. *ru'ús* (*rús*), fem. head; *ša'r*, the hair (collective)<sup>1</sup>; *šā'ra*, a hair, pl. *šu'úr*; *'én*, pl. *'iyún*, *āyun*, eye; *rāqabe*, pl. *riqāb*, neck; *ḥanak*, pl. *aḥníke*, mouth; *widn*, pl. *ōdān* or *iudān*, ear; *ḥadd*, pl. *ḥudūd*, cheek; *šobā'*, pl. *šawābi'*, finger; *rigl*, pl. *árgul*, foot; *rāḥ māšī*, he went on foot; *ána*, *ínle*, *húwa* *'á'uz*, I, you, he wishes, wants; *é*, what? (usually at end of sentence); *daḥált*, I entered (with accusative); *in*, if (always with the past tense, see Conjugation); *inn*, that (this conjunction unites with the pronominal suffixes: e. g. he said that you had been with him, *qál innak kunti 'ándoh*; I saw that he killed the man, *šuft innoh qátal errágil*); at midday, at noon, *fiḍḍuhr*; for example, *másalan*; from fear, for fear, *min elḥóf*.

*akún*, I shall be; *tekún*, fem. *tekunī*, thou wilt be; *yekún*, he will be; *tekún*, she will be; *nekún*, we shall be; *tekúnū*, you will be; *yekúnū*, they will be.

*yekún lí*, *yekún lak*, *yekún loh*, &c., I shall have, thou wilt have, he will have.

### Exercises.

*gānī* (came to me) *wāḥād mā šuftōš ābādān* (whom I had never seen). *ána daḥált el'ōḍa elli kánū fihā*. *ahó bét rábi' fissikke di*. *ána 'á'uz* (I want) *innak tegīb-lī* (you give me) *qiršén* (two piastres). *gá héne* (came here) *el'āláy ettelātīn*. *ḥamast agzá' min arbaḥtāšar*. *dāḥalū* (they entered) *eggenéne telātā telātā*. *ána kuntē fī mašr marratén*, *wēbúkra lāzīmīnī asáfir henák* (there) *márra tánye* (again). *búkra nekún 'andē ḥabībak*, *tešúfnā* (you will see us) *henák*. *lāzīmīnī*

<sup>1</sup> i.e. the generic name, the name of the species; the name of the single specimen is formed from the collective name by the addition of the feminine termination *a*, *ā* or *e*: thus *ša'r* the hair, *šā'ra* a hair; *naḥl* the date-palm, *nāḥle* a date-palm.



*ruḥ min elmáblāḡ* (sum of money) *dä*. *ána kúntē fi bēt ḥabībī mūddet nuṣṣē sā'a*. *sā'a wēnuṣṣ* (an hour and a half). *essā'a wāḥde wēnuṣṣ* (half-past one o'clock). *tekúnū búkra* 'and *aḥbābkum* ? *lá* (no) *yā ḥawāga nekún fi'lmedīne*.

Where were you? We were in the pasha's gardens for the space of two and a half hours. And where will you be to-morrow? In Cairo (*maṣr*), please God (*inšallāh*)!  $\frac{3}{15}$ .  $\frac{7}{8}$ . Fifteen at a time. Ten at a time. They entered the garden four by four. How many children have you? (Translate: How many [*kām*] child *lak*?) I have four children, two boys and two girls. Every fourth man died. I was in Egypt for (a space of) two years. They went out of the house one after the other (*ṭilī'ū min elbēt*). Where are my children? Two of them are in your room (*etnēn mínhum . . .*).

## LESSON X.

### THE VERB *gā* (COME) IN THE PERFECT.

*gēt* (*gīt*), I came; *gēt*, fem. *gēti*, thou camest; *gā*, he came; *gāt*, she came; *gīnā*, we came; *gītū*, ye came; *gum*, they came.

VOCABULARY.—*áiwa*, yes; *nā'am*, yes; *nā'am* ? (interrogative), I beg your pardon (what did you say)? *éna'am*, certainly, of course! *lá*, no; *ummāl*, indeed; *mā'lúm*, naturally; *lá budd*, it is unavoidable, necessary, must (like all auxiliaries of mood and their circumlocutions it has the present after it); *arúḥ*, I go; *terúḥ*, thou goest; *biddī*, *biddak*, *biddoh*, I wish, thou wishest, he wishes; *múmkīn*, possible; *gēr múmkīn*, impossible.

### Exercises.

*dilwáqlē gēt min* 'and *aḥúya*. *dä errágil élli šúftoh embáreh*. *iḥne saknīn fi'l bēt élli quṣṣād eggābāl*. *abúk ráḥ fēn* ? *ráḥ* 'andē *ḥabīboh*<sup>1</sup> *bíla šakk* (without doubt). *hāt-lī elkitāb betā'i*. *húwa fōq eddūlāb fi 'ódeti*. *lá buddē terúḥ* 'and *elḥakīm* (doctor). *gum*

<sup>1</sup> The insertion of 'and is necessary here; without it the sentence would mean that his friend went.

*embāreh, kǎnū fī maṣr. yā wǎlād! nā'am, yā ḥawāga? lāzim terūḥ 'and elqúnṣul (consul). kuntē filmedīne? āiwa, yā sīdī (Sir! to Mohammedans), (āna) kuntē fī maṣr. iṣṭarēt (I bought) seggāde 'ala šān (for) abūya. lāzim yekūn elwǎḥīd (in this way the impersonal 'one' can be rendered) rāḍī (pleased). biddak ē? biddī arūḥ el'iskenderīye, lāzīmni akūn henāk būkra. šūftē kām (several) rāgil fī genēnet elbāša, wēbazūnn (I think) hum ḥarāmīye.*

It is not possible that you go there (*henāk*). Where are your brothers? They are in Cairo. Did you come here yesterday or to-day? I came from Suez (*su'ēs*) yesterday. You! boy! (*īnte, yā wǎlād*) who was here? Your sister was here, Sir, she wants (*biddīhā*) to go away (translate: she goes away = *tesāfir*) to-morrow. That is impossible; she must stay (*tīfḍal*) here. I was with your brother yesterday and I came from him (*min 'āndoh*) to-day. Have you seen Alexandria (yet)? Of course, Sir! I was there for four years. The carpet is under the sofa. Put (*ḥoṭṭ*) the lamp upon the table (*'aṭṭarabēze*)<sup>1</sup> or upon the cupboard (*'addūlāb*)<sup>1</sup>. Put your hand into your pocket (*gēb*). Give me my books, my lamp, and my carpet.

## LESSON XI.

### THE VERB—INTRODUCTORY—THE TRILITERAL VERB (PERFECT).

The following points are to be noticed in the formation of Arabic verbs:—

- (i) If the verb has *three* (triliteral) or more root consonants.
- (ii) If a *w* or a *y* is one of the consonants.
- (iii) If the second and third *radicals are the same*.

From the Simple Form of the verb several *Derivative Forms* are constructed (ten in modern Arabic and fourteen in the classical language), each of which causes some modification in the original meaning. No verb, however, forms all these derivatives; of some

<sup>1</sup> Contracted for *'āla eṭṭarabēze* and *'āla eddūlāb*.

the simple form alone exists, of others only one or more of the derivative forms.

There are *two simple Tenses*, the *Perfect* (or past tense) and the *Present* (or future).

There are *two Moods*, the *Indicative* and the *Imperative*.

There is only *one Voice*, viz. the *Active*, since the *Passive* can be obtained by the use of a derivative form.

### THE REGULAR TRILITERAL VERB.

The form in which a verb is given in Arabic is not the infinitive, but the 3rd pers. sing. of the past tense: e.g. *kātab*, he has written; *širīb*, he has drunk; *sūkut*, he has been silent. (It must therefore be understood that in the vocabularies the Arabic verbs are not really in the infinitive, though so translated for the sake of brevity.)

The *past tense* of these three forms (the *fā'al*, *fī'il*, and *fu'ul* forms) is as follows:—

<i>katābt</i>	I have written
<i>katābt</i>	thou hast written
<i>katābtī</i>	thou hast (fem.) written
<i>kātab</i>	he has written
<i>kātabet</i>	she has written
<i>katābnā</i>	we have written
<i>katābtū</i> ( <i>katābtum</i> )	you have written
<i>kātabū</i> ( <i>kātabum</i> )	they have written.

The past tense of the *fī'il* and the *fu'ul* forms is conjugated in almost the same manner, except that before vowel terminations they frequently drop their second vowel.

E. g. <i>širībt</i>	I have drunk
<i>širībt</i>	thou hast drunk
<i>širībtī</i>	thou hast (fem.) drunk
<i>širīb</i>	he has drunk
<i>šīr(i)bet</i>	she has drunk
<i>širībnā</i>	we have drunk

<i>širíbtū</i> ( <i>širíbtum</i> )	you have drunk
<i>šir(i)bū</i> ( <i>šir[i]bum</i> )	they have drunk.

In the same way :

<i>sukúltt</i>	I have been silent
<i>sukúltt</i>	thou hast been silent
<i>sukúltti</i>	thou hast been (fem.) silent
<i>súkut</i>	he has been silent
<i>súk(u)tet</i>	she has been silent
<i>sukúltnā</i>	we have been silent
<i>sukúlttū</i> ( <i>m</i> )	you have been silent
<i>súk(u)tū</i> ( <i>súktum</i> )	they have been silent.

In the same manner are conjugated :

<i>ḍárab</i> , strike, hit (lit. he has struck) ;
<i>násah</i> , copy out ;
<i>fíḍil</i> , remain ;
<i>nízil</i> , descend.

VOCABULARY.—*eššāms*, the sun ; *qámar*, moon ; *nígme*, pl. *nugúm*, star ; 'arḍ, earth, land ; *táll*, pl. *tídl*, hill ; *móiyē*, water ; *šarbát*, sherbet ; *šáy*, tea ; *qáhwe*, coffee ; *nebíd*, wine ; *fingán*, pl. *fenāgín*, cup ; 'āmenāuwal, last year ; *esséne eggā'iyē*, next year ; *mim múddet sinín*, for years ; *temélli*, always (without interruption) ; *maktáb*, pl. *makātīb*, letter ; *in* (*íza*, *lau*), if (always has the perfect after it) ; *kē'inn*, as if, as, like (always takes the pronominal suffix : e. g. *dī imāre kē'innēhā seráye*, this is a building like a palace) ; *lilbē'*, for sale ; *kāmān*, also, again ; *lé*, why? (usually placed at end of sentence).

### Exercises.

*elḥuṣān* (horse) *élli šúftoh*, *muš* (is not) *lilbē'*. *ḍarābtē bāgletak* (*bāgle*, pl. *biḡál*, mule) *lé?* *nasáht elkitáb élli kán fí dūlābī?* *rāḥ filqáhwe* (café) *welá*<sup>1</sup> *širīb ḥāga* (and not drank something = and drank nothing). *širíbnā fingānēn qáhwe*. *širbet kubbāyet móiye*.

<sup>1</sup> If two sentences are connected and the second one is negative, 'not' in the second is translated by *lá* ; if the first sentence is also negative *mā* . . . ‡ may stand in it (see Lesson XIII).

'āmenāuwal kūnlē fī maṣr telātā marrāt. elbēt elli 'attāllē dā ē? dā serāye (palace). širbū nebīd? lā yā ḥawāga širībā šarbāt. nasāhnā elmaktāb. katābtū elkītāb. elmār'a dī sūktet min mūddet kām (several) sēne welā qālet ḥaga (and has not said anything). nīz(i)let min eggābāl. eššāms ṭīlī'et (rose ṭīlī') fōq (over) eggībāl. in fiḍilt (if you stay) hēne mūddet senetēn telātā (two or three years) yekūn lak (you will have) māl (wealth) kebīr.

Has he copied the letter? Yes, he has copied it. Where have you been? Last year I was in Suez; and next year I shall be in Rosetta (*rašīd*). She has been silent, but he has told me all (*qāl lī kūlloh*). Have you drunk sherbet? No, we have drunk wine and a cup of coffee. Give me wine, water and a glass. Did you stay long (*zamān ṭawīl*)? Yes, we stayed five hours. If you write the letter come (*ta'āla*) to me (*'āndī*). What is that house which lies at the foot (*fī safḥ*) of the mountain? (Translate: That house, which is, &c., what?) I do not know (*mānīš 'ārīf*); it is a building like a school (*kuttāb*).

## LESSON XII.

### PRESENT—IMPERATIVE—PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES—*be*.

The following are the *Present Forms* of the verb: *yif'il*, *yif'al*, *yuf'ul* (*yif'ul*). The second vowel (i.e. the one between the second and third radicals) is changed in the present of most verbs; but no definite rules can be given for the change. In this book (as in the majority of grammars and dictionaries) the present vowel is given after every verb: e.g. *kātab*, *u*, write (present, *yūktub*); *širīb*, *a*, drink (pres. *yīšrab*).

PRESENT of *kātab*, write.

<i>āktub</i>	I write or I will write
<i>tīktub</i>	thou wilt write
<i>tīktūbī</i>	thou wilt (fem.) write
<i>yīktub</i>	he will write

<i>tíktub</i>	she will write
<i>náktub</i>	we will write
<i>tíktúbū</i> ( <i>tíktúbūm</i> )	you will write
<i>yíktúbū</i> ( <i>yíktúbūm</i> )	they will write.

PRESENT of *šárib*, drink.

<i>ášrab</i>	I drink, I will drink
<i>tíšrab</i>	thou wilt drink
<i>tíšrábī</i>	thou wilt (fem.) drink
<i>yíšrab</i>	he will drink
<i>tíšrab</i>	she will drink
<i>níšrab</i>	we will drink
<i>tíšrábū</i> ( <i>m</i> )	you will drink
<i>yíšrábū</i> ( <i>m</i> )	they will drink.

The *Imperative* is formed from the root of the verb with the present vowel and a prefix. This prefix is *i* if the present vowel is *i* or *a*; *u* or *i* if it is *u*: e. g. *ínzil*, come down! (from *nízil*); *íktub* or *úktub*, write! *íšrab*, drink! *ídřab*, strike! For the *Feminine* form an *i* is added; for the *Plural*, *ú*: *išrábī*, drink (fem.)! *išrábū*, drink ye! *uktúbī*, write (fem.)! *uktúbū*, write ye! Similarly, *idrábī*, *idrábū*.

The *Agent* or *Active Participle* has the form *fá'il*, fem. *fá'ile* or *fá'le*, pl. *fā'lín*: e. g. *šárib*, drinking, fem. *šáribe* or *šárbe*, pl. *šārbín*; *kátib*, writing, fem. *kátibe* or *kátbe*, pl. *kātbín*.

The *Patient* or *Passive Participle* has the form *maf'úl*, fem. *maf'úla*, pl. *maf'úlín* or *mafā'íl*: e. g. *maktúb*, written (a written thing), fem. *maktúbā*, pl. *maktúbín*<sup>1</sup>; *maqtúl*, killed, fem. *maqtúlū*, pl. *maqtúlín* or *maqātíl*.

The *Infinitive* or *Noun of Action* has numerous forms, which are all substantives. The Arabic infinitive is only to be used to translate the English infinitive when the latter can be replaced by a verbal substantive. The infinitive must be learnt by practice: *ḍarḥ*, a striking; *fi'l*, doing, deed; *ṭulīʿ*, ascending, ascension; *nuzúl*, descent, going down; *šurb*, drinking, smoking.

<sup>1</sup> In the meaning 'a letter' *maktúb* makes plural *makātīb*.

We repeat here what has been already stated: the pronominal suffixes can be used as objectival suffixes for the personal pronouns. However, in the first person singular *nī* is substituted for *ī*: e.g. *ḍarābnī*, he has struck me (the accent is altered just as with the possessive suffixes); *qatālhā*, he has killed her; *širbūh*, they have drunk it; *katabnākum*, we have written you down; *šāfnā*, he saw us; *ʿimiloh*, he has done it.

As regards the meanings of the tenses: the Perfect tense treats of some action in the past; the Present treats of some action not yet finished, and it may be translated by the Present, Future, or Imperfect.

To express an *immediate present* the letter *b* (*be*) may be affixed to the *present* (*me* in the 1st pers. pl.): e.g.

<i>báktub</i>	I am in the act of writing
<i>betíktib</i>	thou art in the act of writing
<i>betíktíbī</i>	thou art in the act of (fem.) writing
<i>beyíktib</i>	he is in the act of writing
<i>betíktib</i>	she is in the act of writing
<i>meníktib</i>	we are in the act of writing
<i>betíktibū</i>	you are in the act of writing
<i>beyíktibū</i>	they are in the act of writing.

Conjugate:—*gārah*, *a*, wound; *šābar*, *u*, have patience; *misik*, *i*, take; *fātaḥ*, *a*, open; *nādah*, *a*, call (to somebody *li*); *kāsar*, *i*, break.

VOCABULARY.—*laḥm*, meat; *ḥiṭṭet laḥm*, a piece of meat; *láḥmē maslūq*, boiled meat; *láḥmē mášwī*, roast meat; *duḥān*, tobacco; *širīb edduḥān*, smoke (tobacco); *ḥašīš*, hemp (for smoking); *hashish*, grass; *gazzār*, pl. *gazzārīn*, butcher; *ḥabbāz*, pl. *ḥabbāzīn*, baker; *kawālīnī*, pl. *kawālīniye*, locksmith; *naggār*, pl. *naggārīn*, carpenter; *qīdir*, *a*, be able (with following present); *ʿirif*, *a*, know, know how to (*savoir*) (also with present).

### Exercises.

*elbáb maftūḥ*, *indah* *lilkawālīnī yíftaḥoh* ('so that' is left out).  
*uṣbur šūwāiye lám̄mī* (wait a little till . . .) *gā gārī*. *eṭṭarabéze*



*maksúra, lázim yiṣalláhhā ennaggár. hát-lī ḥúttet láhme maslúqa*<sup>1</sup>.  
*indah lilḥabbáz. beti`ráfše*<sup>2</sup> *titkállim bil`árabi?* *áirwa, yá sídī,*  
*bá`raf atkállim šūwáye* (a little). *betiqdáršē tífṭaḥ báb eggenéne?*  
*betimil ē?* (*imil* = do, make). *báktub gawáb. šurb edduḥán*  
*welḥašš yífqir* (make poor, impoverish) *nás ketír* (many). *gara-*  
*ḥúnī bisikkíne. íšrab fingán qáhwe, yá ḥabībī. garáḥoh biḍárbe*  
*šedíde* (with a strong blow). *elbint elmagrúḥa mátet* (died) *embáreḥ.*  
*háwa yimná`nī* (*mana', a, prevent*) *'an šurb edduḥán. širíbt ennebíd?*  
*áirwa, širíbtōh. ennaggár háwa sákin fén?* *'irifnáḥ. garaḥnáḥ.*  
*fataḥúh. yimsikúnī. tiksaríh. kasarúh. kásarū. 'irfū.*  
*'irfúh. yíqdar yífṭaḥoh. kátaboh. kátabū. katabúh.*

Where is your brother? He is writing a letter. Do you drink coffee or wine? Give me a glass of wine; coffee prevents me from sleeping (*'an ennóm*). He has written this letter. Who is here? The locksmith is going to open the door. Call this youth (that) he may open the garden gate (translate simply by Present). Call this gentleman, he knows Arabic (*beyi`raf el `árabi*). Where does the baker live? He lives in that house. Have a little patience, Oh girl! Has he wounded you with a knife? Coffee-and tea-drinking (*šurb elqáhwe weššáy*) do harm (*yedúrr*). Give me a piece of roast meat, a glass of wine, and then (*bá'dén*) a cup of coffee and a cigarette (*sígára*). You have wounded him. He has opened it (*-oh*). We have written it. They write. Have patience (sing.). Have patience (plural). You have broken it (you in plural). You (plural) are breaking it. We have caught hold of him. They will catch him.

## LESSON XIII.

### AUXILIARY AND NEGATIVE PARTICLES.

In Upper Egypt (rarely in the towns) the *immediate present* is often formed from the present with the prefix *'ammál*, fem. *'ammále*,

<sup>1</sup> Here fem. because *lahmē maslúq* is collective, by *ḥútte* one single morsel is indicated.

<sup>2</sup> The interrogative particle *š* (*še*) is added when an affirmative answer is expected.



pl. *'ammalín*, shortened to *'amma*, *'am*, *ma* : e.g. *'amma aráh*, I am in the act of going ; *'am akállimoh*, I am speaking to him ; *ma 'áktub elgawáb*, I am writing the answer.

The immediate *Future*, the intention of doing something and being on the point of doing something are expressed by the present preceded by *rá'ih*, *ráh*, fem. *rá'ihē*, *rāhe*, pl. *rá'ihín*, *rāhín*, or by *ráh* (unalterable) shortened to *ha* : e.g. *ráh yíšrab*, he is on the point of drinking ; *ráh ánzil*, I am going to go down immediately ; *ha kí'mil é?* What are you going to do now ?

The *Imperfect* is expressed by the combination of the perfect of *kán* with the present of the verb : I entered the room and saw my friend who was sitting writing, *dahált el'óda fěšúftē habíbī hūwa kán yúq'ud weyiktīb* ; I used to cook twice a week, *kunt aḡbuḡ filgúm'a marrelén*.

Example of such a combination of *kán* with the present : *kúnt áktīb*, I was writing ; *kúntē tiktīb*, fem. *kúntī tiktībī* ; *kán yiktīb*, fem. *kánet tiktīb* ; *kúnnā níktīb* ; *kúntū tiktībū* ; *kánū yiktībū*.

The *Pluperfect* is translated by *kán* and the perfect of the main verb : e.g. *kán 'imil*, he had done ; *kúnē katábt*, I had written ; *kánū nádahū lihaddám lámmā dáhal elqauwás*, they had called the servant when the cavass (consular servant) came in.

The *Future-perfect* is formed by the combination of the present of *kán* with the perfect of the main verb : e.g. *akún katábt*, I shall have written ; *yekán 'imil eššúḡl*, he will have done the work.

The *Active Participle* is often used with the personal pronouns to express the present : e.g. *ána kátīb*, I am writing ; *ihnā 'arḡín*, we know ; *ínī 'ámle*, thou (fem.) art doing.

The most common *Negation* is *má . . . š* (cf. *ne . . . pas*) ; *má* comes before the verb, *š* is suffixed to the verb. E.g. *má katábs*, he has not written ; *mā'mílš* (for *má a'mílš*), I am not doing. *š* and the last syllable of the verb only form one tonic-group ; therefore the position of the accent is frequently altered, and not unfrequently a short vowel is inserted : e.g. *ḡarab* but *má ḡarábš* ; *ḡarábt* but *má ḡarábtš*.

Certain suffixes are inserted between the verb and the particle *š* :

thus *má ḡarabłóhš* or *má ḡarabłóš*, I have not hit him ; *má yimsikúhš*<sup>1</sup>, they will not catch hold of him.

If the last radical of the verb is *z*, *s*, *š* or *š* it is usually assimilated to the following *š*: thus *má ḡulúšš* (pronounced *ḡulúššš*).

To render negative the present formed from the active participle and the pronoun, the negative particle is used with the pronoun: thus *mántiš*, not I ; *mántiš*, not you ; *mantíš* (fem.), not you ; *muš*, not he ; *maḡnāš*, not we ; *mantúš*, not ye ; *mahumš* or *muš*, not they: e. g. *mántiš kátib*, I am not writing ; *mantíš kátbä*, you (fem.) are not writing ; *mantúš kátbín*, ye are not writing.

*muš* (not), makes single words negative: e. g. *dä muš küwáiyis*, this is not nice ; *elbét dä muš kebír*, this house is not large.

VOCABULARY.—*ḡále*, pl. *ḡalát*, aunt (maternal) ; *‘ámme*, pl. *‘ammát*, aunt (paternal) ; *ḡál*, pl. *aḡwál*, uncle (maternal) ; *‘amm*, pl. *a‘mám*, uncle (paternal) ; *ibn el’ibn*, grandson (son of the son) ; *ibn elbint*, grandson (son of the daughter) ; *gedd*, pl. *agdáđ*, grandfather ; *gedde*, pl. *geddát*, grandmother ; *bint el’ibn*, *bint elbint*, granddaughter ; *ibnē ‘amm*, cousin (paternal) ; *ibnē ḡál*, cousin (maternal) ; *bintē ‘amm*, *bintē ḡál*, cousin (fem.) ; *‘arúse*, pl. *‘ará‘is*, bride ; *‘arís*, pl. *‘irsán*, bridegroom ; *ḡáṭib*, fem. *ḡáṭbe*, match-maker, marriage-contractor ; *góz*, pl. *agwáz*, husband ; *góze*, pl. *gōzát*, wife ; *ḡámā*, father-in-law ; *ḡamát*, mother-in-law ; *šahr*, pl. *ašhár*, son-in-law ; *kínne*, pl. *kánā’in*, daughter-in-law ; *‘ala šán*, *min šán*, for, because ; *lá . . . welá*, neither . . . nor.

### Exercises.

*ráh áfđal henák telát iyám. ifđal héne, lázim tiktíblī* (for me) *gawáb líbnē ‘ammī*<sup>2</sup> (= *lī’ibne*). *in riđít* (if it is agreeable to you) *ab’át lak* (I send you, from *ba’at*) *ḡaddámī. bazúnn* (I think) *ḡiye má katabéłš elgawáb ää. mániš fákir* (remember) *kilmátoḡ* (*kílme*, pl. *át*, word). *lá yá síđi dä muš bét aḡáyä. simi’t* (hear) *elhábar ? lá má simi’tóš* (= *má simi’tóhš*). *má qibilnúš* (receive)

<sup>1</sup> Since the *h* of the suffix is mute there is no difference in pronunciation between this and *má yimsikúš*, they will not take hold. The context alone must supply the meaning.

<sup>2</sup> *lī* is used to form the dative.

*elgawáb. 'iza gá maktúb 'ala šání (for me) iqbáloh. aḥ'át lak errúzma (parcel). māqbalhāš (= mā aqbalhāš). akūn ṣallāht elmuḥlāh, 'iza riġ'it (come back) ellēla di. qibilnāh wenib'átoḥ liḥabībā. (ána) kúntē nasāht elkitāb, lámām (when, as) gá gārī. mā fataḥnāš. mā fataḥnāhš. mā katabtūš. mā garāḥtiš elbint. mantūš 'āmlīn. muš kātīb. mantīs šārbā.*

Send me, Sir ; I will do it. He has not done it. You have not hurt (wounded) him. In summer (*fiṣṣēf*) there is no (*māfiš*) water in this valley (*wādī*, pl. *widyān*). What are you doing? I am copying your letter (participial construction). I have not drunk (any) wine. I do not drink coffee. We had waited three hours in the coffee-house when my servant came (and) called me. Where are you living now? We live in this street now. Will you accept the present (*hedīye*) which I sent you? Yes, Sir, I will accept it. We have not wounded him. I have not opened it. She has not written it. You are not writing (participle). They have not done it. He has not killed him. We do not remember (*maḥnāš fākrīn*). You have not received it.

## LESSON XIV.

### II. FORM—IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

The *Second Form* of the verb is obtained from the simple form by doubling the middle radical. If the first form expresses a state or condition, the second form expresses the bringing about of that state or condition ; it has also the sense of causing, or being busied with : e.g. *kútur*, to be much, be numerous, whence the II. form, *káttar*, to increase ; *'ilim*, to know, II. form, *'állim*, to teach, to cause to know.

The Conjugation is very simple, being exactly like that of the original verb.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
'allimt, I taught	a'allim, I teach
'allimt, fem. 'allimtī	ti'allim, fem. ti'allimī
'állim, fem. 'állimet	yi'allim, fem. ti'allim

## PERFECT.

'allímnā

'allímtū

'allímmū

## PRESENT.

ni'állim

ti'állimū

yi'állimū.

IMPERATIVE: 'állim, teach; fem. 'allímī; pl. 'allímū.

PARTICIPLE: *mu'állim*<sup>1</sup>, taught; *mekáassar*<sup>2</sup>, broken in pieces, from *káassar*, break in pieces (transitive).

INFINITIVE: usually has the form *taf'il*: e.g. *ta'lim*, the teaching, the instruction; *ta'ríf*, definition, tariff, from 'árraf, make known. (Other forms occur but are rare: e.g. *tagríbe*, experience; *tikrár*, repetition.)

We shall here give the *Imperative Negative*, which is rendered by the negation *mā...š*, with the corresponding person of the present: e.g. *mā tiktíbš*, do not write! *mā tindahúš*, do not call! *mā tuskutíš*, do not be silent (fem.)!

In the above manner are conjugated: 'árraf, make known; *káassar*, break into fragments; *hállaš*, set free, cause to finish; *fárrag* (with accusative of the person and 'ala, before the object), show.

N.B.—In the II. form the vowels are the same in the perfect and present.

VOCABULARY.—*gámi*\*, pl. *gawámi*\*, mosque (large); *másgid*, pl. *maságid*, mosque (small); *mádnā*, pl. *ma'ádin*, minaret; *adán*, call to prayer; *elqorán*, the Koran; *qá'ad*, u, sit down; *essá'a*, the hour; *essá'a hámsa*, five o'clock; *essá'a sílte wēnuşş*, half-past six; *kídä*, so, thus (placed after adjectives: e.g. *ṭawíl kídä*, so long); *nézzil*, let down, sink (trans.); *kitf*, pl. *kitáf*, shoulder; *ennahárdä*, to-day; *min*, from, since; *min ímte*, since when? *min zamán*, since a long time, a long time ago.

## Exercises.

*kúntū fēn ennahárdä?* *kúnnā wáya šāḥib* (landlord) *elloqánda betá'etnā*, *húwa farrágnā 'aggámi*\* *we 'ala mádnetoh.* *nézzil essälle*

<sup>1</sup> *me* is also found; especially before dentals and gutturals.

<sup>2</sup> No difference is made between the active and passive participles here; the sense determines which is used.

(pl. *silāl*, basket) *min kítfaḵ*. *búkra yifárrag 'ala 'l'ahrám* (pl. of *háram*, pyramid) *wē 'al'abū'lḥól* (sphinx). *mā teḥallášš elkiláb*. *min imte intū héne? ihne héne min teláta sinín*. *ḥarrágnā* (drive out) *elḥarāmye min elbét*. *teḥarrágnū min bétak? áiwa, itla' (tíli', go)! teḥáṣṣalū* (reach) *maṣr imte? niḥaṣṣálhā búkra bádiri*. *lissā mārāfš* (*lissā mā = not yet*). *'úskut, yá wālād, inte kaddáb* (liar, pl. -ín). *'állag* (hang up) *hudúmī* (my clothes)! *eṭṭarabéze maksúra*, *yisálláhhī* (repair) *mín? ti'azzilū* (move) *min bétkum, dā ṣaḥílḥ* (right, true)? *áiwa, ne'azzil mínnoh, yisállahoh ennaggár*. *káttar qáhwe* (increase = take more, drink more)! *séllim 'ala* (greet) *ḥabíboh*. *mā tikattárš móiye! mā tиграҳúhš*. *mā tiḥallášš elkiláb qabl essá'a temányä*.

Take more water! What has he shown you? He has shown us the town and its mosques. Take the glass down (*nézzil*) from the cupboard. To-morrow morning I shall move from my house (*a'azzil min bétī*). Who can repair this table? The carpenter will repair it. Have you greeted (*séllim 'ala*) your teacher? We have moved from this house; they are going to show us a house opposite the mosque; perhaps (*rúbbamā*) I shall live (*sákan, u*) there with (*wáya*) my brother and my cousin. Do not smoke too much tobacco (*mā tikattárš edduḥán*)! Do not drink too much wine (see last sentence)! Let the dogs loose at nine o'clock. How long (since when) have you been in Egypt? We have been here two years and a half (*senetén wēnúṣṣ*). Where have you been to-day? They have learnt Arabic (*el'arabī*). Come at half-past five (come = *tá'a, tá'ála*, pl. *tá'álū*).

## LESSON XV.

### III. FORM.

The III. form is obtained by inserting a long *ā* between the first and second radicals of the simple verb (the second vowel is always *i*). This form denotes an attempt to perform the action expressed by the primitive verb or a mutual performing of that action. *kátib*, correspond, from *kátab*, write; *qátíl*, fight, from *qátal*, kill; *báḥis*,

dispute, from *bāḥas*, inquire after, search for. In many cases the derivation of the meaning is not obvious: e. g. *qābil*, meet, from *qībil*, receive, accept; *ṣāmiḥ*, pardon; *‘āmil*, manage.

The conjugation is in this case also simple; note must, however, be made that before a suffix beginning with a vowel the *i* may be dropped and the *ā* shortened.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
<i>kātībt</i> , I have corresponded	<i>akātīb</i> , I shall correspond
<i>kātībt</i> , fem. <i>kātībtī</i>	<i>tikātīb</i> , fem. <i>tikātībī</i> ( <i>tikātbi</i> )
<i>kātīb</i> , fem. <i>kālbet</i> ( <i>kātībet</i> )	<i>yikātīb</i> , fem. <i>tikātīb</i>
<i>kātībna</i>	<i>nikātīb</i>
<i>kātībū</i>	<i>tikātibu</i> ( <i>tikātībū</i> )
<i>kātībū</i> ( <i>kātībū</i> )	<i>yikātībū</i> ( <i>yikātībū</i> ).

IMPERATIVE: *kātīb*, fem. *kātbī*, pl. *kātībū*.

PARTICIPLE: seldom used as anything but a noun or adjective: e. g. *mebāšīr*, overseer; *menāsīb*, fit, suitable; *meḥāfiz*, governor.

INFINITIVE: also usually used as a substantive: e. g. *ḥisāb*, bill, reckoning, calculation; *mekātibe*, correspondence; *meḥāfza*, governorship.

**N.B.**—All the forms do not occur in all the verbs. Many infinitives, participles, &c., are found, of which the original root forms do not occur in modern Arabic.

The following may be conjugated like the above: *sāfir*, travel; *rāhin*, go bail for; *sā'id*, help.

VOCABULARY.—*yóm el'áḥad* (or *elḥád*), Sunday; *yóm el'etnén*, Monday; *yóm etteláte*, Tuesday; *yóm el'árba'*, Wednesday; *yóm elḥamís*, Thursday; *yóm eggúm'a* (or simply *eggúm'a*), Friday; *yóm essábt*, Saturday; *gúm'a*, pl. *gúma'*, week; *šahr*, pl. *šuhúr*, month; *sā'a*, pl. *sā'át*, hour; *rub'ē sā'a*, quarter of an hour; *nūṣṣē sā'a*, half an hour; *telát arbā' essā'a*, three-quarters of an hour; *daqīqe*, pl. *daqā'iq*, minute; *bilkitābe*, in writing; *aḥbárnī bilkitābe*, he has informed me in writing; *yimkínoh*, it is possible for him; *ḥés*, because; *'ala gāfle*, suddenly; *yā dūb* (adv.), at the most; *'alqalíl*, *bilqalíl*, at the least; *qalíl*, few, little of; *qalíl min ennás* or *nás qalíl*, few people.



'Too, too much,' may be translated by *bīziyāde* placed after the adjective, or (more frequently) omitted altogether: e.g. *dā sa'b 'alēya*, this is too hard for me; *eššāgara 'alīye bīziyāde*, the tree is too high.

### Exercises.

*aḥbárnī bilkitābe, innoh yīgī* (he will come) *búkra. lāzīmni 'alqalīl gúm'a 'alašán* (for) *eššūglē dā. kunt áktib, 'ala gáfle simíht* (*simí't*, hear) *kārkābet ennás. loh máblaḡ sūḡáiyar yā dūb. elbunduqīye* (gun) *di ṭawīle bīziyāde, lāzīmni bunduqīye qūšaiyāre. yóm el'árba', fīdīlnā fī serāyet elmehāfiz múddet telāt ao arbā'a sāt. má yimkinīš* (is it not possible for me) *áb'at ḥaddāmī, hēs lāzimoh yīštīgīl* (that he works) *fī bēti. eddūlāb dā 'ālī* (high) *bīziyāde 'ala šān ōḡeti. 'īfḍal hēne kāmān kām* (some more) *daqīqe. kánū fī'ggāmi' qalīl min ennás. máqdārš* (= *mā 'aqdārš*) *āmiloh, yā ḥawāga, dā sa'b 'alēya. hát bilqalīl šūwáiyē šarbāt, íza má 'andákš nebīd* (if you have not any wine). *kán qā'id 'alfarš* (= *'ala 'lfārš*) *wē 'ála gáfle wīqi* (fall) *min 'alēh wēmāt* (die).

Help me a little! On Tuesday we shall go to Rosetta. There were few people in the town, but I saw more people (*áktar ennás*) in the open (*fī'lhálā*). I shall stay five weeks in Cairo. He corresponds with him (the accusative simply). There were at the most five men in the coffee-house. If you wish to learn Arabic (*íza kúnitē bíddak tiťállim eťárabī*) you must stay at least two years in Egypt. This house is too small for me, I must have (*lāzīmni*) a larger one. It is not possible for you to copy this letter for me (translate: you copy . . .). Give her (*gīb líhā*) at least some paras (*faḍḍa*, no plural) for her child. I met (*qābil*, with accusative) my friend yesterday. Excuse me (*šāmiḡ*, with accusative), Sir, I did not know it. He is governor (of) Damietta (*dimyāt*).

## LESSON XVI.

### IV. FORM.

The IV. form is obtained by prefixing an *a* and dropping the first vowel. The second vowel is *a* in the perfect and *i* in the present.

Example : *áhbar*, inform.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
<i>aḥbárt</i>	<i>áhbir</i>
<i>aḥbárt</i> , fem. <i>aḥbártī</i>	<i>tíḥbir</i> , fem. <i>tíḥbírī</i>
<i>áhbar</i> , fem. <i>aḥbáret</i>	<i>yíḥbir</i> , fem. <i>tíḥbir</i>
<i>aḥbárnā</i>	<i>níḥbir</i>
<i>aḥbártū</i>	<i>tíḥbírū</i>
<i>aḥbárū</i>	<i>yíḥbírū</i> .

IMPERATIVE : *íḥbir*, fem. *ihbírī*, pl. *ihbírū*.

PARTICIPLE : *múḥbir*. Participles used as nouns and adjectives : *múslim*, Mohammedan ; *múḥsin*, beneficent ; *múmkin*, possible.

INFINITIVE : *ihbár*, information ; *islám*, the Mohammedan religion (lit. submission) ; *iḥsán*, alms, beneficence.

The IV. form is seldom used in conversation, its place being taken by the II. form ; the meaning of the two forms is very similar.

In like manner the following may be conjugated : *áfab*, tire (somebody) ; *ágab*, please ; *ázhar*, make plain, show ; *ášhar*, make publicly known.

VOCABULARY.—*kibr*, pride ; *buḏá'a*, pl. *baḏá'ī*, wares ; *mazád*, auction ; *bilmazád*, by auction ; *ḥaddám*, pl. *ḥuddám*, servant ; *ṭulú' eššāms*, sunrise ; *gurúb eššāms*, sunset ; *bád*, after ; *qabl*, before (of time) ; *wálla*, *wála*, *ao*, or ; *lá . . . welá*, neither . . . nor ; *lákin*, *wélákin*, but, however ; *ámma*, but ; *'írif*, *a*, know ; *rígī*, *a*, come back ; *rágga'*, *yirágga'*, bring back.

'Wish, want,' is often expressed by *bidd* with the suffixes : e. g. *biddī*, *biddak*, *biddoh*, *biddínā* *biddúkum*, *biddúhum*, I want, &c. ; thus, I want to write, *biddī áktib* ; you want to strike him, *biddak tídraboh*.

The auxiliary verb 'ought' is either translated by *lázim in* (with suffix), or by *elwágib in* (likewise with suffix), or, especially in dependent sentences, left out and replaced by the present : e. g. Tell my servant he ought to come here, *qúl liḥaddámī*, *yígī héne* ; tell the clerk he ought to copy out the letter, *qúl likátib*, *yínsaḥ elgawáb*.



'They say, it is said,' can be rendered in Arabic by *yeqúlū*:  
e. g. The king is said to be dead, *yeqúlū in elmālik māt*.

### Exercises.

*qúl* (tell) *lilhaddām yirágga' el'áfš* (things, luggage) *elli hādoh* (*had*, take) *min hēne*. *ha' aḥbirak minnoh* (about it). *essā'a kām?* *essā'a arbā'a wēnūšš*. *nesāfir kām sā'a qablē ṭulū' eššāms*. *yīzhir kibrē ketir*. *nīšhir elbuḍā'a di bi'lmazād*. *nīḥbiroh*. *iḥbīrnī in gā elmeḥāfiz*. *ašhārnā 'afšīnā, lākin mā hāddiš* (no one) *ištarāh* (bought it). *indah lilhaddām, yerūh 'and elḥakīm biḥēs* (because) *āna 'aiyān* (ill). *biddīnā nīḥbiroh 'an eššūḡl elli 'imilnāh*. *yeqúlū in elmeḥāfiz yīgī bākra el'iskenderīye*. *biddūkum tiḡdālū hēne ellēla-di?* *lā, yā hawāga, mā nigdārš* (= *niqdārš*) *nīšdal hēne, lāzim niḥāššal bālādnā elyōm* (to-day). *mā tiḥāššalūhš ennahārdū, bālādkum be'id min hēne wēti'ibū* (*t'ib*, become tired), *wē'af'ābtū hugūnkum* (pl. of *heḡīn*, camel for riding). *yā ḥāmmār* (donkey-boy) *irga' lissā mā defa'tlākš<sup>1</sup>* (*dāfa'*, pay). *rāggā' elḡātā* (cover, lid) *elli aqraḡlīhā-lak* (*āqraḡ*, lend).

You cannot go away before sunset, stay here. Is there anything new (*šē gedīd*)? I know of nothing (translate: I do not know anything [*ḥāga*]). I ought to have gone to my friend's yesterday (translate: it was upon me [*kān 'alēyā*] that I [*innī*] go [*arūh*] to [*lī'and*] . . .). Tell the donkey-boy he ought to come back to-morrow. The governor is said to have gone away (to) Keneh (*qēne*) on the last of last month (*aḥir eššāhr elmāḡī*). What do you want to do? We must (*lāzimnā*) tell him of ('an) this affair ('*amr*, pl. '*umūr*'). It is all the same to me (*di zay bā'ḡoh 'āndī*). We have spoken about (*fī*) literature ('*ilm elkūtub*). We have tired our camels, they must rest a little (*lāzim yistarīḥū šūwāīye*). That does not please me.

<sup>1</sup> From now on we shall not write the dative of the personal pronoun separate from the verb.

## LESSON XVII.

## V. FORM.

This form is characterized by the prefixing of a *t* (*ta*, *it*) and the reduplication of the middle radical. If the first radical of the verb be a *g*, *d*, *z*, *s*, *š*, *ṣ*, *ḍ* or *t*, the *t* of the prefix is assimilated to it (like the *l* of the article): e.g. *iggáuwwiz*, marry; *issáiyib*, be let loose; *iššákkar*, thank (instead of *itgáuwwiz*, &c.). The second radical is doubled as in II. form.

The meaning of this form is Reflexive or Passive.

## CONJUGATION.

## PERFECT.

*it'ahhárt*, I have been delayed  
*it'ahhárt*, fem. *it'ahhárti*  
*it'ahhar*, fem. *it'ahhāret*  
*it'ahhárnā*  
*it'ahhártū*  
*it'ahharū*

## PRESENT.

*at'ahhar*  
*tit'ahhar*, fem. *tit'ahhārī*  
*yit'ahhar*, fem. *tit'ahhar*  
*nit'ahhar*  
*tit'ahhārū*  
*yit'ahhārū*

IMPERATIVE: *it'ahhar*, *it'ahhārī*, *it'ahhārū*; further, *itfaddal*, *itfaddālī*, *itfaddālū*, have the goodness.

PARTICIPLE: *mit'ahhar*, or (in classical language) the form *mutafā'il*: e.g. *mutaméddin*, civilized; *mutašékkir*, thankful.

INFINITIVE: (rare and only classical) *taqáddum*, progress; *tamáddun*, civilization.

In like manner are conjugated: *itkéllim*, speak, converse; *itfárrag 'ala*, look on at; *iššáam*, raise one's hopes, hope; *i'áuwad*, accustom oneself (to = 'ala).

VOCABULARY.—*qádir*, *a* (also *yígdar*), be able, can; *ṭábaḥ u*, cook; *mālik*, pl. *mulúk*, king; *qirán*, pl. *qirānāt*, European king; *i'áuwad 'alháwa*, become acclimatized; *min énhī náhya*? in which direction? *lináhyet* . . . , in the direction of . . . ; *lau*, if (with perfect); 'ala 'ššárt dā, 'ala 'ššurút dól, under this (these) condition(s).

## Exercises.

*māḡdārš a'áuwad 'alháwa; eddúnyā ḡárrē mūfáṭṭis* (the weather is stifling hot). *ezáy* (how) *elháwa* (weather, air, climate)? *elháwa mālīh*. 'ala 'ššárt *dā māḡdārš áfḡal héne áktar* (any more). *itfassáḡū* (go a walk) *wēráḡū* (go) *lináḡyet elbáḡr*. *ána mi'áuwid* (participle of *i'áuwad*) 'ala *šurb edduḡān, má yeḡurrinīs* (*ḡarr, yeḡurr*, do harm). *lau kuntē ḡaṣṣaltinī, kúnna sāfirnā sáwa sáwa* (we would have gone away together). *tī'ráfšē līḡbuḡ* (cook), *yá wālād?* *mā'ráfš áṡbuḡ illa* (except) *kám akl* (= a few dishes). *taḡáddum mašr zāḡir* (clear); *mašr itḡáddamet temelli, min múddet Moḡámmad Ali, bášā elkebír*. *i'aššámt aššufak* (I hoped to see you) *búkra, lákin lē'innak tesáfir bi'twabúr kám sá'a ḡablē tulūš eššāms, itfáḡḡal šarrífni* (visit me) *ellēlā-di*. *itfáḡḡalú, udḡúlú, nitkēllim fī'sšáfar* (about the journey). *tiḡfarráḡū imte 'ala mašr?*

We have been delayed. The progress of Egypt is plain (*zāḡir*). Have the goodness to come in and we will speak (*nitkēllim*) about (*fī*) progress and civilization. Would you not like to go for a little (at end of sentence) walk? [translate: *má biddáḡšē*, you go a walk (*itfassáḡ*) a little?]. Can you (= 'irif) write Arabic? I hope to visit (present) the mosques to-morrow. I am accustomed to drinking coffee (*šurb elḡáḡwe*). You are not very well (*šāḡḡetáḡ muš ḡwaiyíse*); according to my ideas (= 'ándī) you ought (*lázim*) to go a little walk. Have you become acclimatized (already)? No, Sir; I cannot accustom myself to the heat (*šóḡ*). We have been delayed a long time (= *ketír*). That does not matter (*má'alēḡš*)! I have entertained myself (*itḡáḡḡit*) very well with (*wáḡā*) him.

## LESSON XVIII.

## VI. FORM—REFLEXIVE VERB.

The VI. form is obtained by placing *it* before the root (see last lesson as regards assimilation of the *t*) and inserting a long *a* (*á*) between the first and second radicals. What has already been said

concerning the III. form about the omission of the *i* holds good here also.

The meaning is reciprocal, implying an effort on both sides: e.g. *ikátīb*, correspond (with one another).

## CONJUGATION.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
<i>ikātīb</i>	<i>atkātīb</i>
<i>ikātībt</i> , fem. <i>ikātībī</i>	<i>tītkātīb</i> , fem. <i>tītkātībī</i>
<i>ikātīb</i> , fem. <i>ikátibet</i>	<i>yītkātīb</i> , fem. <i>tītkātīb</i>
<i>ikātībna</i>	<i>nītkātīb</i>
<i>ikātībūtū</i>	<i>tītkātībū</i>
<i>ikátībū</i>	<i>yītkātībū</i> .

IMPERATIVE: *ikātīb*, *ikátībī*, *ikátībū*.

PARTICIPLE and INFINITIVE: rare forms, scarcely found except in classical Arabic: e.g. *mītkātīb*, correspondent.

The following are similarly conjugated: *īḡālīb*, struggle with one another; *īḥāniq*, quarrel with one another; *īqābil*, meet each other.

‘One another’ is usually expressed by *ba’d* (with the suffixes): e.g. they spoke with one another, *kallīmū mā’a ba’dūhum*.

The *Reflexive Verb* may conveniently be inserted here. Since a real reflexive pronoun is wanted in Arabic, recourse must be had to one of the words *nafs*, soul; *zāt*, being, person; *‘én*, eye; *rās*, head, with the possessive suffixes: e.g. *māuwut náfsoh*, he killed himself; *qauwásū nufúshum*, they shot themselves; *tīḥfī nafsáhā*, she hides herself.

The word ‘self’ is also expressed by means of these words (with *bī* if necessary): e.g. *dā hūwa bī‘énoh*, that is he himself; *šuft abūk náfsoh*, I saw your father himself; *qál fī náfsoh*, he was speaking to himself, he said within himself.

‘Alone’ is *wáḥdī*, *wáḥdak*, &c.: e.g. *kúntē filbét ána wáḥdī*, I was alone in the house.

*áḥar*, fem. *úḥra*, pl. *úḥar*, other: *elkiláb eláḥar*, the other book.

‘Other than, another than’ is *ḡér*: e.g. another book than this, *kitáb ḡér dā*; I have seen another than him, *šuft ḡéroh*.

VOCABULARY.—*ger zálík*, besides; *in kán kide*, under such circumstances; *'ala kúllī ḥál*, in any case; *mísik min el'id*, take by the hand; *'irif min šé*, recognize by something; *mírid min šé*, be ill of something; *húmma*, fever; *sá'le, kúḥḥa*, cough; *burnéṭa*, hat; *gúmruk*, custom-house; *derwíš*, pl. *darāwíš*, dervish.

### Exercises.

*ána á'rafoḥ min burnéṭetoh. misíknī min 'idī wēfarrágnī 'ala bétoh. húwa mírid min elhúmma. beti'rásfšē titkállim bilfēransáwī ? lá, yá ḥawága, atkállim bil'arabī bess (only). in kán kide, mátiḡdárš tisáfir wayáḥ, lázimoh 'ala kúllī ḥál rafíq (travelling companion), yí'raf elfēransáwī. errafíq qábl eṭṭaríq (way) [Proverb]. šuft abúyá ? šúftē rágil qūráyib 'and (near by) bétak ; lákin mániš 'arif íza kán 'abúk, bazúnn (I think) kán géroh. hát burnéṭa gér di. bínṭī kánet waḥdihā filgenéne. qáuwwas náfsōḥ, lákin má yuráfšē (one does not know = it is not known) lé. kán ḥaddámak náfsōḥ, kán yištáḡil (work) filbostán (pl. *basātín*, garden). eddarāwíš itḡálbū wiḥánqū (=wē'ilḥánqū). itqābílṇā quddám bét elmeháfiz. itkātíbnā zamán ṭawíl.*

Under such circumstances you ought to go at once (*qawám*) to ('and') the doctor. He was ill of fever for a long time. Give me another cup. I caught hold of him by the hand and showed him my garden. I met him (*qābíltoḥ*) in the town. I was alone in the coffee-house; my friends did not come (*māḡúmš*). This man did not do it, it was another than he. He saw (*šáf*) himself in the mirror. Have you been corresponding for long? Yes, we have been corresponding (*itkātíbnā*) for four years. Why are you quarrelling and fighting?

## LESSON XIX.

### VII. FORM.

This form is obtained by prefixing *in* to the original verb. The meaning is usually passive, sometimes reflexive. The perfect

always has two *a*'s, and the present two *i*'s: e.g. *inkásar*, *yinkísir*, be broken, be beaten (in battle); *inkátab*, *yinkítib*, be written.

## CONJUGATION.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
<i>inkasárt</i>	<i>ankísir</i>
<i>inkasárt</i> , fem. <i>inkasárñi</i>	<i>tinkísir</i> , fem. <i>tinkísirñi</i>
<i>inkásar</i> , fem. <i>inkásaret</i>	<i>yinkísir</i> , fem. <i>tinkísir</i>
<i>inkasárna</i>	<i>ninkísir</i>
<i>inkasártũ</i>	<i>tinkísirũ</i>
<i>inkásarũ</i>	<i>yinkísirũ</i> .

IMPERATIVE: *inkísir*, fem *inkísirñi*, pl. *inkísirũ*.

PARTICIPLE: not used, replaced by passive participle of the I. form: e.g. *maksúr*, broken; *mabsút*, rejoiced, happy, content.

INFINITIVE: rare.

In the same way are conjugated: *infátaḥ*, *yinfítih*, be opened; *inkátab*, *yinkítib*, be written; *inṭáḥan*, *i*, be ground; *inšárab*, *i*, be drunk (passive).

VOCABULARY.—*quddám wišš el'alam*, before the eyes of the people; *ána má-lī?* What has that to do with me? *ahó*, *ahí*, *ahóm* (*ahúm*), here he is, she is, they are (*le*, *la*, *les voilà*); *min faḍlak*, be so good as to ...; *elli loh* 'and (lit. what to him is), possessions: e.g. your possessions which are with me, *elli lak 'andī* (= what I have of yours); what we have of his, *elli loh 'andīnā*; *bárik li*, wish good luck to some one; *aḥúh*, *uḥtéhā*, his like, her like (one of a pair): e.g. *húwa rágil má loh aḥúh fiddúnyā*, he is a man without his like in the world; *báḡla*, pl. *biḡál*, coll. *baḡl*, mule; *ḥumár*, pl. *ḥamír*, donkey; *ḥammár*, pl. *ḥammārín*, donkey-boy; *gámal*, pl. *gimál*, camel; *heḡín*, pl. *húgun*, dromedary, riding-camel; *gammál*, pl. *gammālín*, camel-driver; *bi-ṣu'úbe*, hardly, scarcely (with difficulty); *kull* (invariable), each, every; *dáḥil*, *gúwa*, inside, in; *koḥl*, a black dye for the eyelids; *ingáraḥ* (*min*), be wounded (by); *inšárab*, *yinšírīb*, be drunk, be drinkable; *inbá'at*, *yinbí'it*, be sent; *inṭába'*, *yinṭíbī'*, be printed; *inhámaq*, *yinhúmiq*, become angry; *inbásaṭ* (pronounced *imb...*), *yinbísit*, rejoice.



## Exercises.

*inbasátnā ketír 'ala šán* (because of) *hediyétkum. essá'ī* (messenger) *yinbí'it lilgúmruk* (custom-house). *mín fātaḥ elbāb ? kán biddoh* (he wanted) *yiflaḥoh, lākin mā-yinfittihš*<sup>1</sup>. *essá'ī elli ṭalābtoḥ* (demand) *lissā mā'inba'átš. anbisiṭ ketír 'alašán* (because) *búkra atfárrag 'ala gāmi' 'lázhar* (the el-Azhar mosque). *elmōiye di mā tinširíbš*<sup>1</sup>. *fī bulāq* (a suburb of Cairo) *yinṭibi'ū kútub 'arabi*<sup>2</sup> *wē'urubāwī*<sup>2</sup>. *hūwa inhāmaq 'ala šán elkubbāye elmaksúra. elli liye 'ándak ḥamsín fāḍḍa. elli lúkum 'andīnā kām* (how much)? *elgaziye* (dancing-girl, pl. *ḡawāzi*) *betírquš* (from *rāqaš*, dance) *ṭāiyib ketír, mā lihā 'uḥtīhā fī kull elbālād* (the whole place). *mā tiksírš elmirāyā di, imsíkhī bišwéš* (slowly = carefully). *elqāḥwe di mā tinširíbš* (is undrinkable), *hāllī ḡérhī. abārīklak, yā sídī, mā lak aḥúk fī kull eddūnyā*.

The dervishes were beaten yesterday near (*bīqurb*...) Wady Halfa. Sir, the garden door cannot be opened (simple VII. form), the key is broken. This wine (*neḥīd*) is not drinkable; it is (too) sour (*ḥāmiḍ*). What you owe me is (translate: my possessions with you) twelve dollars (*riyāl*). Where was this letter written? It was written in Alexandria. This book was printed in Cairo. Do you know the new (*gedīd*, fem. *gedídā*) street? Have you sent the messenger for the doctor? No, Sir, he has not yet been sent; I will send him now. The thieves were caught (*inmāsak, i*) in the doctor's garden. I wish you good luck, Oh men! You only owe me a few paras (only = *bess*, after paras = *fāḍḍa*). My brother's house has been burnt (*inhāraq, i*). Don't come in, Sir; there are (*fīh*) ladies inside (*ḡūwa*).

<sup>1</sup> This passive form frequently implies a meaning of possibility or of worthiness. Thus in this case: it cannot be opened. Cf. *inšārab*, be drinkable (i.e. be worthy of being drunk).

<sup>2</sup> Adjectives in *ī* for the most part remain unchanged.



## LESSON XX.

## VIII. FORM.

The VIII. form can be obtained in two ways :

1. By prefixing *it* (assimilation of the *t* as above) before the simple form : e.g. PERF. *itfá'al* or *itfí'il*, PRES. always *yitfí'il*. The meaning is generally passive, though sometimes reflexive<sup>1</sup>. E.g. *itqáfal*, *yitqífil*, be shut ; *itríkib*, be ridden or driven ; *itmísik* (= *inmásak*), be caught ; *ilhámaq* (= *inhámaq*), become angry ; *itláfāt*, look round.
2. The second method of obtaining the VIII. form, which is derived from the written language, but also employed in colloquial Arabic, is to insert a *t* (assimilation) after the first radical and to prefix an *i* : PERF. *iftá'al*, PRES. *yiftá'al* or *yiftí'il*. The meaning is more often reflexive than that of the other form. *ištágal*, *yīštígīl*, busy oneself, work ; *i'támād*, *yī'tímīd*, rely upon, trust ; *i'ttálab*, ask a favour.

The conjugation is quite regular. (Like the conjugation of the VII. form, for example.) The following verbs belong to this form : *iltázam*, *i*, bind oneself, engage ; *iltáfāt*, take care for ; *istálam*, *i*, receive, take charge of ; *iftákar*, reflect ; *imtáhan*, *i*, prove, examine.

IMPERATIVE : *ištágal*, fem. *ištáglī*, pl. *ištáglū*.

PARTICIPLE and INFINITIVE only of the 2nd form : *mištágal*, working ; *muntázim*, arranged ; *mutámād*, trustworthy ; *'istilám*, receipt ; *'irtifá'*, height ; *'intizám*, order, arrangement.

VOCABULARY.—*fulús*, money ; *ṣubḥ*, morning ; *bikifáye*, sufficient ; *'ummál*, of course, indeed ; *tigára*, trade ; *siyása*, politics ; *murgāḥa*, cradle, swing ; *wárša*, workshop ; *kisib*, *a*, earn, win ; *sa'al*, *a*, ask ('an after) ; *tānbāl* (*tāmbāl*), lazy, idle (*fí*, at, in) ; *qūrāiyib min*, near to ; *qárrab* 'and, bring nearer to ; *min qabīle*, of the race of ; *kúrsī*, pl. *kārāsī*, chair ; *min áhlē* . . . , of the people of . . . .

<sup>1</sup> The VII. and VIII. forms are often used indiscriminately.

## Exercises.

*elfellāḥ* (pl. *fellāḥīn*, peasant) *dā yištīgīl miṣṣūbh* (= *min eṣṣūbh*) *liḥādd el'īse* (till the evening) *welā yīksib fulūs bikifāyā*. *kāntū sāwa* (together) *filqāḥwe, muṣ kīdā ?* (was it not so?) *āirwā kallīmṇā fi'ttigāra we'ssiyāsa*. *mā ti'timidšē 'alēh*; *hūwa muṣ mu'tāmad*. *istalāmū elgawāb, ēllī ba'attoh*. *lā, yā sūdī, yeqūlū mā yistilimūš ābādān* (never). *min ēnhī qabīle errāgil-da ? hūwe min qabīle Ali*. *dā ġer mumkin, hūwa min āhlē su'ēs, bā'rafoḥ min hudūmoh*. *ḥallīnī* (let me) *aṭlīkir šūwāiye*; *līssa mā'rāfš īza kān yimkinnā* (if it is possible for me; from *āmkan, yimkin*, be possible). *yā wālād, 'is'al 'an bēt ettāgir*. *rūḥ wārša ennaġār wešūf* (and look) *'ala 'lmurgāḥa, ēllī 'imīlhā 'alašān wālādī*. *ištāġlī āktar, yā bint, īntī tānbālā fi kullī ḥāga*. *qārrab elkūrsi 'āndī*. *ābū 'lhōl qūrāiyib min elahrām*. *itrīkīb<sup>1</sup> elhūgun dōl tūl yōm* (the whole day) *mā ti'būš* (or *elhūgun itrīkībū*).

If (*īza kān* with pres.) any one (*wāḥid*) asks something (*ḥāga*) of God (*min allāḥ*), he will not deny it him (*mā yimnaḥḥāš*). We have worked very hard (=very much). The garden gate is opened at seven o'clock and shut at eleven. This man is not trustworthy, he is always praising himself (*iftāḥar, i*) but he never works (never = *ābādān*). He earns much money. I shall earn still more (*kāmān ziyādā*). Ask for the workshop of the locksmith, and see (*šūf*) if (*īza*) he has mended my key. When (*īnte* at end of sentence) is the pupil's (*telmīz*, pl. *tālāmze*) examination (*'imtiḥān*)? Have you thought about (*fī*) your journey (*sāfar*)? I have thought a great deal (=much) about it; but I do not yet know when I shall go away. Will you examine me? He quickly got into a passion. What (*ē* at end of sentence) have you done? Gizeh (*elġīze*) is near Cairo. Bring the table near the chair.

<sup>1</sup> See rules for agreement of the verb : Lesson XXIII.

## LESSON XXI.

## IX. AND X. FORMS.

The IX. form is only used in speaking of colours. The conjugation differs slightly from the previous ones.

## PERFECT.

*iḥmarrēt*, I have become red  
*iḥmarrēt*, fem. *iḥmarrētī*  
*iḥmárr*, fem. *iḥmárret*  
*iḥmarrénā*  
*iḥmarrētū*  
*iḥmárrū*

## PRESENT.

*aḥmárr*  
*tīḥmárr*, fem. *tīḥmárrī*  
*yīḥmárr*, fem. *tīḥmárr*  
*nīḥmárr*  
*tīḥmárrū*  
*yīḥmárrū*.

PARTICIPLE: *miḥmírr*, reddish; *miṣfírr*, yellowish; *miḥdír*, greenish; *mizríqq*, bluish.

INFINITIVE: very rare.

The following are conjugated similarly: *iḥdárr*, be (or become) green (shoot of trees); *iṣfárr*, be yellow, become yellow; *izráqq*, be blue, become blue.

The X. form takes *ista* as a prefix. The meaning is best shown by the examples. The conjugation is very simple.

## PERFECT.

*istaḥsín*, I approved of  
*istaḥsín*, fem. *istaḥsínī*  
*istaḥsin*, fem. *istaḥsín*  
*istaḥsinnā*  
*istaḥsínū*  
*istaḥsínū*

## PRESENT.

*astáḥsin*  
*tistáḥsin*, fem. *tistáḥsinī*  
*yistáḥsin*, fem. *tistáḥsin*  
*nistáḥsin*  
*tistáḥsinū*  
*yistáḥsinū*.

IMPERATIVE: *istáḥsin*, fem. *istáḥsinī*, pl. *istaḥsínū*.

PARTICIPLE: *mustáḥsin*, approving; *mustáḥdam*, an official.

INFINITIVE: *istiḥsán*, approval; *isti'mál*, application (from *istá'míl*, use, apply).

In like manner are conjugated: *istágrab*, consider near; *istáb'id*,

consider distant, consider improbable; *istá'grib*, find striking, wonder at.

VOCABULARY.—*wáraqa*, pl. *auráq*, leaf of tree, sheet of paper, paper; *rabī'*, spring (season); *ṣeḥf*, summer; *ḥarīf*, autumn; *šitā*, winter; *faṣl*, pl. *fuṣūl*, season; *šimāl*, north; *gunūb*, south; *šarq*, east; *ġarb*, *máġrib*, west; *šimālī*, northern; *šárqī*, eastern; *maġrābī*, pl. *muġárbe*, of a western race; *ġarbī*, western; *ḥibr*, ink; *nuṣṣ*, half; *istáḥmil*, put up with, endure; *istáġil*, hasten; *istákšif'an*, seek after; *ḥalaṭ*, *u*, mix; *mašrú'*, undertaking, project; *ašloh*, in the beginning, at first; *ḥátta*, in order that, until, even.

### Exercises.

*wáraqa eššáġärä di nuṣṣáhā miḥmírra, nuṣṣáhā miḥdírra. iza kán wáḥid yúḥluṭ ázraq wē'ásfar, yiḥdár. eššágar tiḥdár<sup>1</sup> firrabi'. māstaḥmílš elháwa dä múddä kebîre (or múddä medîde, a long time). istaḥmílť sáfarī táiyib ketír, lákin dilwáqt ána ta'bán (tired). māqdárš astáḥsin elmašrú' dä, ašloh lázim af'íkir. istá'gibt 'ala 'ssáfar, éllī 'imíltoḥ. sāfirt min héne imte? má tista'gilúš kídä! tista'gilš kídä lé? māstaḥmílš táiyib essáfar bi'lwabúr (steamer). istákšif'an šandúqī (box), bazúnn húwa lissa fiḥwabúr. tistaḥsin šúġle ḥabíbak? lá', māstaḥsinóš (= má'astaḥsinóḥš), lákin bey'ímil temelli zay má yéġiboh (as it pleases him). elhedýä di māqbalháš. kunt istaqrábt essíkke di, wēḥíye be'íde 'annā.*

In autumn the leaves turn (become) red. Can you stand the climate (*háwa*) of Egypt? Yes, I stand it very well. When you copy this letter use (*ḥod* = take) black ink. Who can endure this work? I am astonished at your project; but I do not approve of it (accusative), for (*ḥákim*) it is difficult (*ša'b*) for you (*'alék*). Every official uses red ink. First of all I want to consider, wait a moment. Make inquiries about (*'an*) the way! I have heard that you (*innak*) are looking for a house. There is a house (*fiḥ bét*) for sale (*lilbé'*) not far from here (*muš be'id min héne*). It need not be a whole house (*muš lázim innoh yekún bét*); I want only a few rooms.

<sup>1</sup> Here the collective noun *šágar* is treated as feminine. (See Lesson XXIII: Laws of Agreement.)

## LESSON XXII.

## THE QUADRILITERAL VERB.

The conjugation does not present any difficulties. For the second vowel the same rules hold good as in the II. form.

## PERFECT.

*tarbíst*, I have bolted  
*tarbíst*, fem. *tarbístī*  
*tárbis*, fem. *tarbísē*  
*tarbísna*  
*tarbístū*  
*tarbísū*

## PRESENT.

*atárbis*  
*títárbis*, fem. *títárbīsī*  
*yítárbis*, fem. *títárbis*  
*nítárbis*  
*títárbísū*  
*yítárbísū*.

IMPERATIVE: *tárbis*, *tarbísī*, *tarbísū*.

PARTICIPLE: *mētárbis*, bolted.

INFINITIVE: not used.

In a similar manner are conjugated: *láhbat*, confuse; *máswaq*, whip.

The quadriliteral verbs have only one derived form, namely the V, which is formed by the prefixing of *it*: e.g. *illáhbat*, become confused; *itwálwil*, groan, mourn. The conjugation is perfectly normal, we do not, therefore, give an example of it. The student may conjugate the following: *it'áfrat*, behave like a hobgoblin, do something incredible; *ittárbis*, become bolted; *izzálzil*, become shaken.

ADVERBS. There are two sorts of adverbs, those which are purely adverbs, as: *héne*, here; *ímte*, when, and those which are derived from adjectives and substantives. These latter are usually the same as the original form from which they are derived, and only here and there have the old accusative termination *an*: e.g. *málíh*, *íáiyib*, good; *qáwī*, strong; *gíddan*, very (from *gidd*, zeal, earnestness); *auwálan*, at first.

VOCABULARY.—*bárdī*, *bárdak*, *bárdoh*, I also, thou also, he also; *dilwáqtē wērá'ih*, from now on; *berbēri*, pl. *barábra*, Berberine, Nubian; *fí'rríf*, in the country (also *fí'hála*); *bárrā* (*hárīg*)

*elbālād*, outside the town; *binnahār*, by day; *billēl*, by night; *qá'ad* 'and *eṭṭarabéze*, sit at table (or *gamb eṭṭarabéze*); 'be called' is expressed by 'his name,' 'my name,' &c.: e.g. What is your name? *'ismak é?* (*ism* = name); *'ismī yúsef*, I am called Joseph; What is that called in Arabic? *di 'ismoh é bil'árabī?* What is the meaning of that? *éš mī'na di? yá'nī*, that is to say, 'i.e.'

### Exercises.

*éš mī'na di titḥánqū temélli?* *ismē šāḥib* (landlord) *elqáhwe di é, yá wālād?* *ismoh Abdúllah.* *fi'ṣṣēf ihna saknín filḥála, wēfi'ššitā filmedīnā.* *tarbíst eddūláb?* *áiwa, tarbístoh.* *lá, yá ḥawága, má yittarbíšš* (pronounced ... *rbíšš*). *ifḍal héne wētarbis kull elbībān.* *kán bíddoh* (he wanted) *yúq'ud gamb eṭṭarabéze, lákin māfīš kúrsī.* *húwa tām̄bāl ketír, yinám* (he sleeps) *binnahār wēbillēl.* *ezáy* (how) *aḥúk?* *húwa temélli mabsút!* (pleased, contented) *yitmáshar* (behave in a silly way) *záy?* (like) *magnún* (pl. *magānín*, fool). *dafá'tloh máblaḡ zūḡáiyar, yá'nī 'ešrín riyál* (dollars). *dilwáqtī wērá'ih tiḥbúḥlī* (from *ṭabāḡ*, cook) *kúllī yóm fārḥa* (pl. *firāḡ*, hen). *fil'óda di kúllī šé meláḡbaṭ* (in confusion, in disorder). *má rattibóšš* (= *rattibóḡšš*, set in order) *lé?* *elḡága di 'ismíhā é bil'árabī?* *ismíhā kanún* (pl. *kawānín*, stove).

Do you speak Arabic, Sir? I know ('*irif*) Arabic a little; I have only been here (*ána qá'id héne má baqālī illa*) three weeks. Your speech (*kalām*) is understandable (*infáham, i*, be understandable), although (*má'a kón*) your pronunciation (*teláffuz*) is still (*líssā*) bad (*baṭṭál*). The Arabic language (*lisán*) is more difficult (*ša'b*, comparative, *ás'ab*) than (*mímmā*) I had imagined (*iṣṣáuwwar*). You must stay (*qá'ad, o*) a long time (*múdde*) in the country; then (*ba'dén*) talking (*elkalām*) will not be very hard for you (be hard for some one, *ás'ab, yíš'ab 'ala wáḡid*). What is the meaning of this? everything is in disorder; it seems that (*báiyin inn*) I must send you away (*sáiyib, yis.*). Why do you behave in such a silly manner? Are you a fool? Sir, pardon me (*šámiḡ*, with accusative) I have been drinking wine and I am not accustomed to wine-drinking (*šurb ennebíḍ*).



## LESSON XXIII.

## IRREGULAR VERBS—VERBS WITH SECOND AND THIRD RADICALS THE SAME—AGREEMENT OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

Conjugation of verbs with the second and third radicals the same :  
e.g. *madd*, stretch out.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
<i>maddét</i>	<i>amídd</i>
<i>maddét</i> , fem. <i>maddéti</i>	<i>temídd</i> , fem. <i>temíddi</i>
<i>madd</i> , fem. <i>máddet</i>	<i>yemídd</i> , fem. <i>temídd</i>
<i>maddénā</i>	<i>nemídd</i>
<i>maddétū</i>	<i>temíddū</i>
<i>máddū</i>	<i>yemíddū.</i>

IMPERATIVE : *midd*, *míddi*, *míddū*.

PARTICIPLE : *máddid*, *máddä*, *máddin*.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE : *mamduđ*, -ä, -in.

NOTE.—The perfect always has the vowel *a* ; the present, *a*, *i* or *u*. If the present vowel is *a* the prefix of the 3rd pers. sing. masc. is *yi* : e. g. *kabb*, *yekúbb*, pour out, upset ; *zann*, *yezúnn*, believe, think ; *laff*, *yelíff*, wrap up ; *lamm*, *yelímm*, gather, pick up ; but *ṣaḥḥ*, *yiṣáḥḥ*, be correct.

Similarly are conjugated : *ḥaṭṭ*, *yehóṭṭ*, place, put down ; *kaḥḥ*, *u*, cough ; *baṣṣ*, *u*, look ; *ḥašš*, *u*, come in ; *ḥabb*, *i*, love, like ; *mass*, *i*, touch, handle ; *ṣaḥḥ*, *a*, be correct.

Derived forms of these verbs :

II. Form : *géddid*, renew ; *ḥássis*, cause to sink ; *ḥánnin* 'ála, be merciful to (strong, or regular conjugation).

IV. Form : rare, only occurs in a few participles ; *meḥíll*, full of holes, riddled ; *mešírr*, bad-tempered ; *muhímm*, important.

V. Form : *iggéddid*, be renewed ; *iṭ'állil*, make excuses ; *itmáddid*, stretch oneself out (strong conjugation).

VII. Form : *insákk*, be shut ; *inḥáṭṭ*, be put ; *inḍárr*, be damaged ; *inkább*, stream, run together (conjugated like *madd*).



VIII. Form: *itláf*, be wrapped up; *itlamm*, be gathered together, congregate; *itrášš*, be sprinkled (conjugated like *madd*; the present takes *a*).

X. Form: *istaḥáqq*, desire; present, *yistaḥáqq*.

As regards the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject a distinction must be made between those sentences in which the verb precedes the subject, and those in which the subject precedes the verb. In the latter the verb must agree with its subject, although, even in this case, collective nouns and broken plurals are frequently regarded as being feminine singular: e.g. *elbaqqālīn yebī'ū ḥudār*, the grocers sell vegetables; *sitt ūšhur ḥúlset*, six months have been completed; *ennás betí'raf*, people know, it is known.

If on the other hand the verb precedes the subject the verb is usually in 3rd pers. masc. sing.: e.g. *gá-nī ašḥábī*, my friends came to me. The broken plural, however, can here also be treated as a feminine singular, or even as a plural: e.g. *gát-nī ašḥábī*, my friends came to me; *itríkibet elhúgun*, the camels have been ridden (or *itríkibū elhúgun*); *ṣaḥbúnī elgáfara*, the watchmen have escorted me.

VOCABULARY.—*zír*, large porous pitcher; *fát 'ála*, pass by; *yú'raf*, it is known; *yúgad*, there is; *yuqál*, it is said; *yušá*, the report goes; *yúḥša*, it is feared<sup>1</sup>; *áḥir*, last; *radd u*, give back; *niḥá'iloḥ*, at the end, finally; *muddéṭhā*, at the same time; *ḥoš*, pl. *aḥwáš*, court; *mes'älä*, question (substantive); *māḥiya*, monthly salary; *ḥaqíqī*, really, in reality.

### Exercises.

*essíkak itráššū. elkitáb dā yiḥtášš* (concern) *ṭurīḥ elmášriq* (history of the East). *gáblī* (gave) *elbint móiye qúláiyil*<sup>2</sup>. *ḥet* (pl. *ḥīṭán*, wall) *elbét meḥíll*, *lázim yišállahoḥ elbannā'ín* (pl. of *bánnā*, mason). *ḥóṭṭu eššanādiq* (boxes, cases) *fil'óḍa di. itrášš eggenéne* ? *itráššū elbostán wē'lhóš*. *ruddílī búkra elfulús*<sup>3</sup> *elli*

<sup>1</sup> These five forms are remnants of the ancient passive.

<sup>2</sup> *ketír*, much, and *qúláiyil*, little, generally remain unchanged.

<sup>3</sup> *fulús* is plural.

'aṭēthūmlak (I gave you) *embāreh*. *kubb elmōiye fī'zzār*. *ḥaṭṭēt eṣṣandūq filḥōṣ ao filgenēne? mā yisāḥḥiṣ kīdā*. *elbāḥr* (i.e. the Nile) *bīḥiṣ (= beyihiss) min zāmān* (since long ago). *hiḥf* (*haff, i*, dust) *eddulāb wē'ṭarabēze wē'lberēh* (chest of drawers). *elhukūme ḥāssiset* (lowered) *māḥiya elma'mūr* (pl. -īn, official) *dā*. *buṣṣ elwālūd dā! rīgī'et elḥuggāg* (pl. of *hagg*, pilgrim) *min mekka* (Mecca). *yusā' in effendīnā* (the Khedive) *yisāfir būkra līstambūl* (Constantinople). *fāt 'āla 'lgāmi' wešāf* (and saw) *telāte rigāl, yelīffū mādnetoh* (who were walking round its minaret).

Where is the Azhar mosque (*gāmi' 'l'āzhar*)? Go round here (*liḥf min hēne*), go past the Ashraf mosque (*fāt 'āla gāmi' 'l'āšraf*) and then (*wēba'dēn*) turn round (*dāuwar*) a little. Have you dusted the wardrobe and the chest of drawers? You have coughed a great deal to-day. Has the court been sprinkled (with water)? No, I have not yet sprinkled it. Put the box on the table and open it. The people (*ennās*) went round (*laḥf*, with accusative) the mosque. It is not right thus (*kīdā*). Do not be afraid (*mā-teḥāfš*); the dog will not do anything. Stretch out (*māddid*) your hand. Have you shut (*sakk, u*) the door? The girl said (*qāl* or *qālet elbīnt*) that she (*īnehā*) would come back soon (*'an qarīb*).

## LESSON XXIV.

### THE VERBS *ālif*<sup>1</sup>.

Verbs with *ālif* (*hamzā*) as the first radical. The conjugation is usually quite regular.

Example: *'āḥad*, take.

PERFECT.	PRESENT.
<i>'aḥādt</i>	<i>'āḥod</i>
<i>'aḥādt, fem. 'aḥādtī</i>	<i>tāḥod, fem. tāḥōdī</i>
<i>'āḥad, fem. 'āḥadet</i>	<i>yāḥod, fem. tāḥod</i>
<i>'aḥādnī</i>	<i>nāḥod</i>
<i>'aḥādtū</i>	<i>tāḥōdū</i>
<i>'āḥadū</i>	<i>yāḥōdū.</i>

IMPERATIVE: *ḥod, ḥódī, ḥódū*.

The ACTIVE PARTICIPLE is quite regular, with the exception of: 'ákal, eat, and 'áḥad, take, when it is *wákil* and *wáḥid*.

The student may conjugate 'ákal, eat; present, *yákul*; imperative, *kul*, &c.; 'ámar, *yú'mur*, command.

Derived forms of the *älif*<sup>1</sup> verbs.

II. Form: 'aggar, *ye'aggar*, hire; 'áhhar, *yi'áhhar*, delay, retard; 'arraḥ, *yi'arraḥ*, date; 'ákkid, *yi'ákkid*, assure; (irregular, *wákkil*, *yiwákkil*, give to eat, feed.)

III. Form: *má te'āḥiznīš! min gér mu'āḥaza!* By your leave! Excuse me!

IV. Form: not found, except in *múzī*, good for nothing fellow.

VIII. Form: *ittāḥid* (*ittāḥad*), be taken; present, *yittāḥid*; *ittāḥad*, unite (infinitive, *ittiḥād*, unity); *ittákil*, be eatable.

X. Form: *istá'zin*, ask permission; *istāḥil*, be worthy.

VOCABULARY.—*ilhássis*, diminish, lessen; *mestāḥdim*, official (substantive); *mektābā*, writing-desk; *sābāb*, cause; *mu'ēllif*, composer, author; *kéf*, desire, wish, caprice; 'ála *kéfnā*, as we please; *ṭarīq*, pl. *ṭuruq*, way; *sáfar*, pl. *asfār*, journey; *wákil*, *wákla*, *waklín*, eating; *mākúl*, eaten, eatable; 'akl and *wakl*, food; *ḥánnin* 'ála, have pity on.

### Exercises.

*allāḥ yiḥánnin 'ala 'lfaqír* (poor man) *dū. māḥíyetī ilhássiset. neḥúšš filqáhwa dī, nibárbar* (chat) 'ála *kéfnā. 'istaqrábnā eṭṭarīq dū. 'istāgílnā essáfar, élli 'imiltúh. istāgílnā safárnā, ḥákim elwābūr yiḥáššal dilwáqtē ḥátta* (even) *elmedā'in elbā'ide* (the most distant towns) *qawám ketír* (very quickly). *astá'zin, lázim arúḥ dilwáqt. elwābūr gá? líssā māgāš, bazúnn il'áhhar šūwáíye. eššemám* (melon) *dū má yittākílš, húwa murr* (bitter) *biziyáde. lázim tekún elqáhwe ḥílwe záy elmaḥábbe; sódā záy eššētán; wēsúḥne* (hot) *záy gahánnam* (hell). *má te'āḥiznīš, yá ḥawága! wákkil el'ūlād dól. elhúgun líssā má wákkilúš. húwa má yistāḥílš elmadḥ* (praise) *dū.*

Sir, have pity on this poor man and give him (*gíbloh*) some (a few = *kám*) paras (*fádda*). Have you fed the mules? Yes, Sir,

but the horses have not yet been fed. The messenger is late, he must spend the night in Suez (spend the night = *bât, yibât*). Do as you please! Do not eat too much (= *káttar*) melon; it does harm to (*ḍarr*, with acc.) the health (*eṣṣáḥḥā*). The food is not eatable, give me some roast meat. He said (*qál*) that the steamer would (will) be late. The author of this book is *Ibn Sa'íd*. I did not catch (*líḥiq, a*) the boat; it went off (*ráḥ*) five minutes before my arrival (*wuṣúl*). You (your visit has) have given me much pleasure<sup>a</sup>: I hope you will come back again soon (*'an qaríb*). Wait a moment (*istánnā šūwáíye*), until (*lámmā*) the steamer goes (*ráḥ, yerúḥ*).

## LESSON XXV.

THE VERBS *w*<sup>1</sup>.

Verbs which have *w* as their first radical.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
<i>wazánt</i> , I have weighed	<i>wiqíft</i> , I have stood
<i>wazánt</i> , fem. <i>wazántī</i>	<i>wiqíft</i> , fem. <i>wiqíftī</i>
<i>wázan</i> , fem. <i>wázanet</i>	<i>wíqif</i> , fem. <i>wíqfet</i>
<i>wazánnā</i>	<i>wiqífnā</i>
<i>wazántū</i>	<i>wiqíftū</i>
<i>wázanū</i>	<i>wíqfū</i> .

In the Present the *w* is generally changed to *ū*: e. g. from *wázan*, weigh.

## PRESENT.

<i>'auzin</i>
<i>tūzin</i> , fem. <i>tūzínī</i>
<i>yūzin</i> , fem. <i>tūzin</i>
<i>nūzin</i>
<i>tūzínū</i>
<i>yūzínū</i> .

<sup>a</sup> *'anistínī, 'anistínā*, you (sing.) have given me (us) pleasure (entertainment); *'anistúnī, 'anistúnā*, you (pl.) have given me (us) pleasure. Formula used in speeding the parting guest.

A second, but rarer, form of the present occurs in which the *w* is entirely rejected and the *i* of the prefix lengthened: e. g. *yīqa'*, he will fall; *yīqaf*, he will stand.

IMPERATIVE: '*ū'id*, promise! '*ūzin*, weigh! '*ūqaf*, stand!

PARTICIPLE: for the most part regular: *wāsi'*, *wās'a*, *wās'in*, wide, roomy.

PAST PARTICIPLE: *mauzūn*, weighed.

INFINITIVE: *wazn*, weighing; *wād*, promise.

Derived Forms. Their conjugation is strong.

II. Form: *wázza'*, distribute (among = *bén*); *waffar*, spare; *wássa'*, widen.

III. Form: *mewásfa*, description (infinitive).

IV. Form: *auḥaštīnī*, *auḥaštīnā*, *auḥaštūnī*, *auḥaštūnā*, you (sing. and pl.) have [i. e. your visit has] given me (us) pleasure. [At the reception of guests.]

VII. Form: *inwálad*, be born; *inwágad*, be found.

VIII. Form: (Assimilation of the *w* to the inserted *t*) *ittáfaq*, *yittífīq*, agree. Infinitive: *ittifáq*.

X. Form: *istáw'ib*, taste, try; *yistáw'ib*. Participle: *mistáw'ib*. Infinitive: *istū'áb*.

The following verbs may also be conjugated thus: *wáda'*, *yúda'*, place; *wísi'*, *yúsa'*, be wide, be roomy; *wága'*, *yúga'*, pain; *wá'ad*, *yú'id*, promise.

VOCABULARY.—*ḥammāra*, tavern, hotel; '*ágab*, *i*, please (with acc.); *lamba*, lamp; *hel-bétt*, perhaps; *ḥáṭwa-ḥáṭwa*, by steps, by degrees; *ḥíṭṭi-ḥíṭṭi*, piece by piece; '*agúz*, old, aged; *nār*, fire; *ána bardán*, I am cold.

### Exercises.

*wúrmet 'ēnī wērīgīlī. helbétt elgawáb dū teqīl wēyikéllif* (cost) *ziyāde* (more). *tesáfir el'iskenderīye ? wálla' ellámba ! wallá't ellámba, yá wállād ? bētúram (wírum, swell) rásī. inwaládt ímte ? yitwázza' (be distributed) el'ēš welmóyiye bén (among) ennás. ellámba má titwallá's, māf'īš zēt (oil) fīhā. húwa yiwáffar fulús ketír ; bīhēs húwa muddábīr (thrifty) ketír. 'ēnī betúrum qáwī, bazúnn fīhā iltiháb (inflammation). wassá'ū essíkke, m'īnīgđárš nefút* (pass

by) 'alḥágar (stone, rock) dā. 'ūzínū eṣṣandūq dā, helbétt hūwa teqúl<sup>a</sup> 'ala 'lgimāl. ittafáqnā, nesáfir búkra sáwa sáwa, wē'atáššam niḥáššal maṣr<sup>b</sup> ba'd kām yóm. elbeḥéra di wás'a wēḡawīṭa (deep), má niqdárš ni'addihā (cross over it) bila felúke (pl. felá'ik, boat).

Here you are, you have honoured me! Please come in and sit down (*qa'ad*, *yig'od*, imperative *úq'ud*). Hi, boy, bring some coffee and the pipes ('úd, pl. 'ídán)! Where have you been the whole time? I was at home, my children were ill. Light a fire! I feel cold (*ána bardán*). This street has been widened, because it was too (*bīziyāde*) narrow (*dāiyiq*). Mend (set in order = *wáḍḍab*) the lock (*kālún*) of the door. My head is aching. He has hurt his foot (*ingáraḥet rīgloh*), and now it is paining him very much. Does the description of the garden please you? Have you set your watch in order? We have now agreed to buy (*ništírī*) the house and the garden together. When was Mohammed Ali, the Great Pasha, born?

## LESSON XXVI.

### A. THE VERBS *w*<sup>2</sup> AND *y*<sup>2</sup>.

Verbs which have either a *w* or a *y* as the middle radical of their roots will be dealt with here.

There are many verbs which originally were *w*<sup>2</sup> or *y*<sup>2</sup> verbs in which the *awa* or the *aya* has become contracted into *á*: e.g. *qál*, speak, from *qáwal*; *šár*, become, from *šáyar*. We cannot go into these verbs at any length here, but the following points may be noted:—If suffixes beginning with a consonant follow the verbal stem, *awa* becomes *u*, *aya* becomes *i*: e.g. *qult*, I said; *širt*, I became. In the present *wu* changes into *ú*; *yi* into *í*; *wa* or *ya* into *á*: e.g. *yeqúl*, he says; *yešír*, he becomes; *yenám*, he sleeps.

We here give the conjugations of the verbs *qál*, say; *šár*, become; *nám*, sleep.

<sup>a</sup> 'Too' must be supplied.

<sup>b</sup> The full name of Cairo is *maṣr elqáḥira* 'the Victorious.'



## PERFECT.

<i>qult</i> , I said	<i>ṣirt</i> , I became	<i>nimt</i> , I slept
<i>qult</i> , fem. <i>qúltī</i>	<i>ṣirt</i> , fem. <i>ṣirtī</i>	<i>nimt</i> , fem. <i>nímtī</i>
<i>qál</i> , fem. <i>qálet</i>	<i>ṣár</i> , fem. <i>ṣáret</i>	<i>nám</i> , fem. <i>námet</i>
<i>qúlna</i>	<i>ṣírnā</i>	<i>nímnā</i>
<i>qúltū</i>	<i>ṣirtū</i>	<i>nímtū</i>
<i>qálū</i>	<i>ṣárū</i>	<i>námū</i> .

## PRESENT.

<i>aqúl</i> , I say	<i>aṣír</i> , I become	<i>anám</i> , I sleep
<i>teqúl</i> , fem. <i>teqúli</i>	<i>teṣír</i> , fem. <i>teṣírī</i>	<i>tinám</i> , fem. <i>tinámī</i>
<i>yeqúl</i> , fem. <i>teqúl</i>	<i>yeṣír</i> , fem. <i>teṣír</i>	<i>yínám</i> , fem. <i>tinám</i>
<i>neqúl</i>	<i>neṣír</i>	<i>nínám</i>
<i>teqúlū</i>	<i>teṣírū</i>	<i>tinámū</i>
<i>yeqúlū</i>	<i>yeṣírū</i>	<i>yínámū</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

*qúl*, *qúli*, *qúlū*.  
*ṣír*, *ṣírī*, *ṣírū*.  
*nám*, *námī*, *námū*.

## PARTICIPLE.

Either *qá'il* ; *ná'im* ; *ṣá'ir*, or *qáyil* ; *ṣáyir*.

In the case of the *w*<sup>2</sup> verbs, if the *w* is not in the tonic syllable it changes into *hámzä*, if it is in the tonic syllable into *y* : e.g. *šá'if*, seeing ; *ána šāyífkum*, I see you.

Worthy of note are : *'áz*, want, wish, desire. Participle, *'á'iz*, *'áuz*, fem. *'áuze*, pl. *'āuzín* ; and *ráh*, *ú*, go, the participle of which is often used to express the immediate future (I am going to . . . See Lesson XIII).

Similarly are conjugated : *ḥáf*, *yiháf*, perf. *ḥift*, fear ; *gáb*, *í*, perf. *gibt*, give, bring ; *qám*, *ú*, perf. *qumt*, rise up.

VOCABULARY.—*itfárrag 'ála*, look at ; *bás*, *ú*, kiss ; *gáb*, *í*, stray away ; *sáb*, *í*, let go, let loose ; *min zámán*, since a long time ; *hárab*, *a*, flee ; *saraq*, *a*, steal ; *máblag*, sum of money ; *qám*, *ú*, rise up ; *má'a kón*, although, and *likón*, because, take the suffixes : e.g.



although I am ill I shall go out, *má'a kónī ána 'aiyán, ha áṭla'*; because you are tall, *likónak inte ṭawíl*.

### Exercise.

*húwa há'if min é? bīqúl é (= beyiqúl)? bīqúl, dā má yi'gibóhš* (or *má yi'gibóš*). *má'a kónī ána muš filbét, tíqdar títfárrag 'ala 'lfárš, éllī bíddak tíšterih* (buy). *in ruḥtē 'ándē ḥaddāmī, qúlloh innak bíddak títfárrag 'ala 'lfárš fī 'óḍetī elbarránī, wēyifarrágak 'aléh.* *ḥód elgáṭa di, māqdárš anám 'aléhā, fih barāgīt* (fleas) *fihā. filmísā* (in the evening) *māšrábš ābādān šáy, šurb eššáy yimná'nī 'an ennóm* (sleep). *indah liyúsuf eṭṭawíl* (the tall Joseph); *beyíqdar yebúšš min eššibák, likónoh húwa ṭawíl.* *'áuze ti'mīlī é, yá bint? ána 'auz aftíkír ašloh, kíssā mārāfš íza 'andī waqt 'ála šán eššúgl dū.* *ána baḥáf min elhúmma, ḥawalénā* (round about us) *fih mustánqa'* (swamp), *wēdilwáqt eddúnyā ḥárrē ketír.* *yá ḥawága, ti'ibnā fiṭṭulū' wennuzúl* (infinitives of *ṭīlī'* and of *nízil*) *eggibál;* *iḥna gu'ānín* (pl. of *gu'án*, hungry) *wē'aṭšānín* (pl. of *aṭšan*, thirsty) *wēna'sānín* (sleepy); *wēdilwáqtē waqt elmizigórno* (time of the midday siesta, from Italian *mezzogiorno*). *hárabet elḥaramíye min elḥabshāne* (prison).

## B. DERIVED FORMS OF THE w<sup>2</sup> AND y<sup>2</sup> VERBS.

II. Form: *ráuwaḥ*, go away; *záuwaq*, deck out; *ḥáuwwud*, turn aside; *náuwar*, lighten (give light); *láuwin*, colour, part. *mēláuwin*, gay; *mešáuwwš*, unwell; *'áiyat*, weep aloud; *'áiyin*, appoint; *sáiyib*, let loose; *gáiyar*, change, alter.

III. Form: *qáwíl*, agree; *ṭáwi'*, obey; *'áiyin*, perceive; *záyid*, increase, rise.

IV. Form: rare.

V. Form: *iggáuwwiz*, marry; *iḥáuwwiš*, be preserved; *issáiyib*, be let loose.

VI. Form: *ittáwiḥ*, yawn, gape; *iṭṭáwíl 'ála wáḥid*, behave insolently to somebody.

VII. Form: *inbā'*, be sold; *inšál*, be transported. (In the perfect

the *a* remains before suffixes beginning with a consonant, the same is the case in Forms IV, VIII, and IX.)

VIII. Form: *iḥāš*, be kept back; *ibā'*, be sold; *iṣṭād*, fish, hunt.

IX. Form: *iṣwādd*, be black, become black; present, *yiswādd*, *ibyādd*, *yibyādd*, be or become white.

X. Form: *istaqām*, be just, be upright; *istadām*, to last (present *yistaqīm*, *yistadīm*).

Verbs similarly conjugated: *iṣwādd*, be black; *inbā'*, be sold; *issāiyib*, *yissāiyib*, be set at liberty; *gāiyar*, *yigāiyar*, change.

VOCABULARY.—*tāh*, *ū*, lose one's way; *dāuwar* 'āla, look for; *beḥēra*, lake; *ḥāṭir*, wish; *ḥarāmī*, pl. -īye, thief; *ḥēl*, horses; *guḡrāfia*, geography; *tārīḥ*, date (of month), history; 'urūbba, Europe; *bilād el'ārab*, Arabia; 'ifrīqīye, Africa; *bilād eššārq*, 'āsiya, Asia; 'amīrika, America.

### Exercise.

*embāreh effendīnā* (Khedive) *iggāuwiz wāyā wāḥde min banāt sulṭān bilād ettūrḱ*. *yā ḥawāga*, *gā-nū elyōm* (to-day) *ḥaddāmak weqāllī 'innak saiyibtoḥ bīla sūbūb* (without reason), *dā ṣaḥīḥ?* *auwālan*, *yā sīdī*, *bīddī ā'raf mīn ḥadrétak* (your presence; polite form of address instead of *īntē*)? *āna 'lqāḍī* (judge) *ī'mil mā'rāf* (do me the favour) *weqāllī saiyibtoḥ lē?* *saiyibtoḥ bīḥēs hūwa iṭṭāwīl 'alēya*. *lāzim yinšāl elberēḥ dā fiddōr elfōqānī*. *māt min elkōllēra* (cholera); *wīššōḥ* (*wīšš*, face) *iṣwādd kūllōḥ*. *qad* (already) *itbā'ū elbiyūt dōl?* *ṭauwālnā* (prolong, extend) *elmubāsta* (entertainment) *lāzim nerūḥ*. *dauwārnā 'albāgle* (= 'āla elb . . .) *ēllī tāhet fī'ḥālā*. *elḥarāmī issāiyib embāreh*, *wē'nnaḥārdā misikūḥ tānī* (again). *nauwārtū 'l'ōḍa?* *nauwarnāḥā*. *kūntē miṣṭād* (part. of *iṣṭād* fish) *fī beḥēret menzālā* (Lake Menzaleh)? *lā'*, *ennāḥya dī* (neighbourhood) *muḥīfa* (dangerous). *biddūkum tešūfū ē?* *ḥēlnā*. *ḥēlkum dilwāqtē fiḥālā*. *istaraiyāhtū* (recover, present *yistaraiyah*) *šūwāye?* *ezēi* (as) *nistaraiyah* (supply: must), *īḥne temēllī mašgūlīn* (*mašgūl*, busy). *mā biddākš tī'īn* ('an, ye'īn, send for) *eṭṭarabēze min 'and ennaggār?* *embāreh iṣṭādnā gamb el'ahrām*; *wē'nnaḥārdā fī'lfayūm* (Fayum). *mā teḥāwilnīs* (*ḥāwil*, cheat) *lā*, *yā ḥawāga*, *bīddī tintāḥīb* (*intāḥab*, choose) 'āla *ḥātrak* (*ḥātirak*).

## LESSON XXVII.

VERBS WITH *y* AS THE FINAL RADICAL (*y*<sup>3</sup>).

The Perfect goes either like *gárā*, he has run, or like *rídī*, he agreed, was content.

## PERFECT.

<i>garét</i>	(also <i>girít</i> )	<i>riḍít</i>
<i>garét</i> , fem. <i>garéti</i>	( <i>girít</i> , fem. <i>giríti</i> )	<i>riḍít</i> , fem. <i>riḍíti</i>
<i>gárā</i> , fem. <i>gáryet</i>	( <i>gírī</i> ), fem. <i>gíryet</i>	<i>rídī</i> , fem. <i>rídyet</i>
<i>garénā</i>	<i>girínā</i>	<i>riḍínā</i>
<i>garétū</i>	<i>girítū</i>	<i>riḍítū</i>
<i>gáryū</i>	( <i>gírýū</i> )	<i>rídyū</i> .

## PRESENT.

'ágrī, I run	'árḍā, I agree
<i>tígrī</i> , fem. <i>tígrī</i>	<i>tírḍā</i> , fem. <i>tírḍī</i>
<i>yígrī</i> , fem. <i>tígrī</i>	<i>yírḍā</i> , fem. <i>tírḍā</i>
<i>nígrī</i>	<i>nírḍā</i>
<i>tígrū</i>	<i>tírḍū</i>
<i>yígrū</i>	<i>yírḍū</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

'ígrī, 'ígrī, 'ígrū.  
'írḍā, 'írḍī, 'írḍū.

## PARTICIPLE.

*gárī*, fem. *gárye*, pl. *garyín*, running.  
*rādī*, fem. *rādyā*, pl. *rādyín*, content.

PERF. PART.: e.g. from *ḥáša*, *máḥšī*, fem. *maḥšíye*, stuffed.

INFINITIVE: *garayán*, the running (substantive).

The student may conjugate: *ráma*, *yírmī*, throw; *mála*, *yímla*, fill; *ḥáka*, *yíḥki*, tell a tale; *sáqa*, *yísqī*, give to drink, water.

## DERIVED FORMS.

II. Form: *káffa*, *yekéffi*, suffice; *ḥállā*, *yehállī*, let alone, allow (the following verb is in the present: e.g. Let me sleep, *ḥallínī*

*anám !*); *ṣáhha, yeṣáhhi*, awaken; *sállā, yisállī*, amuse. (*ḥallík, ḥallíkū*, stay here! sing. and pl.)

III. Form: *nádā, yenáđī*, call out publicly (part. *menáđī*, public crier).

IV. Form: *áʿta, yíʿtī*, give. Infinitive: *imḍū* (for *imḍá*), signature.

V. Form: *itrábba, yitrábbī*, be brought up, be educated; *issállā, yissállī*, amuse oneself.

VI. Form: *itráḥa, yitráḥa*, be slack. An imp. *taʿála*, fem. *taʿáli*, pl. *taʿálū*, come! replaces the missing imp. of *gá*.

VII. Form: *inbána, yinbínī*, be built.

VIII. Form: *itráma, be thrown*; *ištára, yištírī*, buy; *illáqa, yillíqī*, meet, find.

X. Form: *istáǵna, yistáǵnī*, consider unnecessary; *mustáǵnī*, without need; *istábdā, yistábdī*, begin.

VOCABULARY.—*qirš*, piastre; *ḥikáya*, story, tale; *lāʿb elwaraq*, game of cards; *šemʿ*, candle; *šugl*, pl. *ašǵál*, business, work; *fréngī*, Frank, European; *ṭarbúš*, pl. *ṭarābiš*, fez, tarbush; *šiʿr*, poetry.

### Exercise.

*laqét elḥóga* (teacher) *fén ? girínā ketír, dilwáqtē tīʿbnā. qúl liḥaddāmī, yistábdī dilwáqtē šúǵloh. ištaret kám hedýe ʿala šán ahl bēti* (ahl elbēt, the family). *astáǵnī ʿan elʿáfšē dā* (this luggage) *aḥíbb (= I prefer) táḥod eššandúq dā. ḥámmil* (load, with two accusatives) *elǵamal elḥálm* (pl. *aḥmál*, burden) *dā. erríḥ hādā* (quiet down, only used of the wind). *elbēt ellī yimbínī* (*yinbínī*) *dilwáqtē ʿala šán elmeháfiz. illaqét errigál ellī sáʿalū ʿánnak ? lá má ʿltaqēthúmš. wiláđī kullúhum* (all my children) *itrábbū filmédreset qašr elʿén* (name of the school). *dā má-yekeffíš. má teḥallíhš yerúḥ qablē-má* (before) *šúftoh. ʿímle elkubbáye nebíd* (a double accusative follows the verb to fill). *ʿímle elkubbáye min* (from) *elbír* (fem., pl. *biyár*, well). *malét elqúllā é ? maléthā nuššáhā móiye nuššáhā ḥall* (vinegar). *eššaiyád* (fisherman) *rámā ʿššábakā* (net) *ṭallāḥā* (*ṭallaʿ*, draw out) *māfiš ḥága fíhā. inṭáfā* (be extinguished) *ellámbā ?* (or *ellámba inṭáfet ?*). *rabbúnī* (they

have educated me) *fī 'urúbbā. íntū radýín biššúǵlē da ? lá, má nirdāš. láqák fēn ? girítū ketír, istaraiyáḥū šūwáíye héne. tíšrab qáhwe ao nebíd ? lá, māšrābš ḥága, wála qáhwe wála nebíd (neither . . . nor . . .). ášrab fīngán šáy. issallétū embáreḥ ? issallénā ketír, íḥne líssā ta'bānín. qarénā šūwáíye ṭārīḥ, guǵráfia, wēsi'r.*

## LESSON XXVIII.

## DOUBLY WEAK VERBS.

Those verbs whose roots contain two weak radicals (*w*, *ālif* or *y*) are called *doubly weak verbs*. The most common are : *šáwā, yīšwī*, roast ; *wáfā, yúfī* (with *bi*), keep one's word ; *ṭáwā, yíṭwī*, fold up, infin. *ṭáwī* and *ṭáiy* ; *ráwā, yírwi*, water, *ráiy*, watering, irrigation ; *wí'ī, yū'a*, take care ; imper. *ū'ā, ū'ī* ; part. *wā'ī*, careful ; *sáwā, yīswā*, be worth ; *káwā, yíkwi*, iron clothes.

## DERIVED FORMS.

II. Form : *wáddā, yewáddī*, bring, lead ; *wárrā, yewárrī*, show<sup>1</sup>.

III. Form : *sáwā, yesáwī*, be worth.

V. Form : *itráúwa, yitráuwī*, consult, think over.

VI. Form : infin. *tawánī*, laziness ; *bítawánī*, idle.

VII. Form : *inšáwā, yinšwī*, be roasted.

VIII. Form : *istáwa, yistwī*, be ready, be ripe ; part. *mistwī* ; *itráwa, yitrwī*, be watered.

X. Form : *istáḥā, yistíḥī*, be alarmed ; *mistíḥī*, well-behaved.

'áda, give, and gá, come, specially should be mentioned here.

## PERFECT.

'adét, I gave  
'adét, fem. 'adétī  
'ádā, fem. 'ádet  
'adénā  
'adétū  
'ádū

## PRESENT.

'ádī, I give  
tídī, fem. tídí  
yídī, fem. tídí  
nídī  
tídū  
yídū.

<sup>1</sup> *wárra*, show, and *áda*, give, are constructed either with two accusatives, or with the accusative of the thing and the dative of the person.

IMPERATIVE : *dī*, give ; and from another root *gīb*, *gībī*, *gībū*.

We have already given the perfect of *gā* in Lesson X. The present runs as follows :—

' <i>ágī</i> .	<i>nígī</i> .
<i>tígī</i> , fem. <i>tígī</i> .	<i>tīgū</i> .
<i>yígī</i> , fem. <i>tígī</i> .	<i>yígū</i> .

IMPERATIVE : *ta'āla*, *ta'dī*, *ta'dlū*.

### Exercise.

*iṭwīlī el'āmāme* (turban, pl. 'amā'im). *elwālād dā yiwaddīk eggāmi*. *inšāwā ellāhm elli gībtoḥ-lak?* *ī'mil ma'rūf warrīnī el'ahrām*. *qāl-lī šāḥīb elloqānda, yinšāfū fi'lgāu* (on the horizon). *mā tīstihš tī'mil kīdā?* *nīsīt* (*nīsī*, forget) *adāuwar sā'atī dilwāqtē wāqfe* (it has stopped). *tī'tblē ketīr fi'rrukūb* (riding) *elhegīn*. *nīsīt šandūqī filloqānda, wēmāgdārš ārga' henāk*. *hūwa šāḥīb māl* (a well-to-do man). *rāḥ ā'mil ē?* *kīlmet šāraf* (*parole d'honneur*), *dā mā šuftōš ābādān*.

## LESSON XXIX.

### *tann* (*dann*); *tau*—RULES OF SYNTAX.

'To continue,' 'to go on,' are expressed in Arabic by *tann* (*dann*) with the suffixes : e.g. He goes on writing, *hūwa dānnoh kātib*.

'Just now,' 'this instant,' may be translated by *tau*, *tāwi*, with the participle : e.g. *īnte tau gā'ī*, you are arriving this very moment.

The following GENITIVAL-CONSTRUCTIONS are worthy of particular attention, as being peculiar to the Arabic language.

1. '*ābū* (father) serves mostly to call attention to some striking peculiarity : e.g. '*ābū 'lhól*, father of terror, the Sphinx ; '*ābū-rās*, the man with the (big) head ; it is sometimes used in speaking of prices : e.g. *busāṭ 'ābū ḥāmsā gīnēh*, a five-guinea carpet ; '*umm* (mother), used similarly for feminine substantives, is rarer.



2. *'ibn* (son), *bint* (daughter), are used to express age: thus *húwa 'ibn arbā'in sāna*, he is forty years old; *'ibn arbaḥtāšar*, the son of fourteen (days): i. e. the full-moon.

3. *kull*, the whole, each, all, every; *kullē šahr*, every month; *kullē sänä*, each year; *kull ennäs*, all the people; *kull essänä*, the whole year; all of you, *kullúkum*; all of them, *kullúhum*. It can also be placed after the substantive, with its proper suffix: e. g. *ennäs kullúhum*, all the people; *elbét kulloh*, the whole house.

Two accusatives follow verbs of making, finding, considering, filling and dividing (for 'show' and 'give' see note to last lesson): e. g. *'imiloh bauwáb seráyetoh*, he made him door-keeper of his palace; *laqenā elbáb maflúh*, we found the door open; *'imla 'lfiṅgān qáhwe*, fill the cup with coffee; *'iqsim* (from *qasam*, i, divide) *erragíf teláte ḥiṭaṭ*, divide the loaf into three pieces; *bazúnnoh rágil baṭṭál*, I consider him a bad man.

VOCABULARY.—*gāzā*, *yigāzī*, punish; *elḥōga*, the teacher; *ḥábar ē?* What's the news? *gārā ē?* What has happened? *'ábšar ē?* What do I know? *bikām?* at what price, for how much? (At end of sentence.)

### Exercise.

*gārā ē?* *wālūdak ṭilī min elmáktab* (school) *wemā sellímšē 'ala'l-ḥōga betā'oh wēdikhā gāzāh*. *'úmroh* (his age) *kām sänä?* *húwa 'ibnē telatāšar sänä*. *mā'staḥsínš eššúḡlē dā*, *mā yingáhš* (nágah, succeed). *húwa yitwáqqaf* (give way, yield) *teméllī*, *māhibbš* (= *mā 'ahíbbš*) *rigál záyī dā*. *'istánna šūwáye 'arga' ba'd kām daḡīqa* (minute). *elqādī gāzā kullī rágil wāḥid-wāḥid*. *elbáb dā mā yinqifílš*. *elwālūd dā mā yinhábbiš* (passive of *ḥabb*, love), *húwa baṭṭál ketír*. *kán kátib maktúb*, *'ala ḡáfle* (suddenly) *dáḡal ḥaddámoh*, *gáboh rúзма*, *húwa fátaḥoh*, *ṭállā' mínnoh kām kitáb*, *wēdánnoh kátib*. *ḥīye danníhā ḍárbe wālūdḥā*. *rāḥ tí'mil ē?* *ána tau kátib*. *itfarrágnū 'ala 'l'ahrám wē'al 'ábū-'lhól*.



## LESSON XXX.

## PREPOSITIONS—USEFUL PHRASES, ETC.

Having given a number of prepositions scattered throughout the lessons we will here devote some attention to particular ones<sup>1</sup>. It must be remembered that the prepositions are capable of combination with the suffixes: e.g. *quddāmī*, in front of me; '*ándak*, with you; *mā 'alēš*, never mind, excuse me.

We here give several prepositions in combinations differing from the English usage:

*bi*, by, with, in, at; *bīsúkkar*, with sugar; *bittúrki*, in Turkish; *bi'linglizi*, in English; *bikám*, for how much?

*li* corresponds with our 'have' (in sense of possession).

*min*: *min eššibák*, out of window; *qūrāiyib min*, near by; *min múddet* . . . , since the time . . . ; *wāhid min ašḥābī*, one of my friends.

'*an*: *sá'al 'an*, ask after; *kášaf 'an*, seek for; *istágnā 'an*, be able to do without; *ḡasb 'an*, against one's will; *ḡasb 'annī*, against my wish.

'*ala*: '*ala 'lḡáz*, by gas; '*aššimál*, to the left; '*ala 'lyemín*, to the right; *ša'b 'ala*, unpleasant, difficult for; *ḥarám 'ala*, forbidden for; *sahl 'ala*, easy for; '*éb 'alék*, shame upon you, for shame; '*ala kúlli ḥál*, in any case; '*ala kéfak*, at your pleasure; '*ala 'lḡā'ib*, by heart; '*ala zánmī*, according to my ideas, as I think.

As regards *Conditional Sentences* a distinction must be made in Arabic between real and unreal conditions. Real conditional sentences are introduced by *íza* or *in* with the perfect or the present; unreal (hypothetical) conditional sentences by *lau*, *íza* or *in* (negative *lau-lá'-in*) always with a following perfect: e.g. '*íza šúftoh, qúlloh*, if you see him, tell him; *lau kúntē šúftoh, kúntē qultíloh*, if I had seen him, I should have told him; *lau šúftoh, kunt ista'gíbt*, if you were to see him, you would be astonished; negatively: *lau-lá' in kuntē šúftoh, mā kúntiš ista'gíbt*.

<sup>1</sup> See also the collection of prepositions at the end of this lesson.

## Exercise.

*aštágil* 'ala 'lgáz. *loh kám 'ándī?* *loh 'ándak arbā'a qurūš* (pl. of *qirš*, piastre). *'ēb 'alék, ḡarābtē elwālūd eḡḡā'if dā.* 'ala *zānnī hūwa sāfir embāreh.* 'andākšē fulūs? 'andī kām *qirš bess.* *baššet min eššibbāk.* *lau sāfirt wayāyā, kúntē firīhlē ketír.* *intū 'ārfín síkket mašr?* *lá šakk* (of course) *nī'rāfhā tamām* (perfectly, exactly). *yā wilād, kām bitrídū* (from *rād*, i, want) *in šāhibtūnī* (*šāhib*, accompany) *liḡādd bulāq* (suburb of Cairo). *dī likullinā* (to each of us) *'āšrín fāḡḡā.* *nehā'itoh wišlīnā* (arrive) *fōq rās egḡābāl* (top of the mountain). *'imīlnā šuḡlīnā.* *dilwāqtē nī'raf nitkállim bil 'arabī.* *ellisán dā ša'b ketír, lákin má-ḡifnāš eššū'ube* (difficulty). *dilwāqtē níqrā* (from *qārā*, read) *kāmán kām ḡikāye.*

## PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, PHRASES, ETC.

It is true that we have given a considerable number of these in the course of the lessons, but we deem it expedient to append a longer list here; and we recommend the student to form as many sentences as possible involving the use of them, and thus to gain facility in applying them.

'ala, 'al, upon, over, against, to, about; the *l* is often assimilated to the following consonant, as in the case of the article: e. g. 'ala *elfarš*, on the sofa; *aḡḡarabēze*, on the table.

'an, of, about, than, instead: *rāuwaḡ 'an elbēt*, he was going away from the house (i. e. without having entered it). The *n* is doubled before a suffix beginning with a vowel: 'ānnī, 'ānnak, &c.

'and, at, near, with, 'chez': 'and *elḡakīm*, at the doctor's; *ḡā min 'andē 'ammoh*, he came from his uncle's (*il venait de chez son oncle*); *rūḡ lī 'and elḡakīm*, go to the doctor's.

*ba'd*, after (time): *ba'd senetén*, after two years.

*bāla* (*bílā*), without: *balāš*, in vain, gratis; *bī dūn, biḡér, min ḡér*, are more common than *bāla* (*bílā*).

*bārrā*, outside.

*bén*, between: *bēnī wēbēn wāḡid*, between me and between some one else; *bēn elkúrsī wēbēn eḡḡarabēze*, between the chair and the table.

*bî*, *bê*, *by*, with, at; with the suffixes *bî* (*bîyâ*); *bak*, fem. *bik*; *boh*, fem. *bîhâ*; *bînâ*, *bûkum*, *bûhum*.

*bidâl*, instead of, for.

*fî*, in: with suffixes *fîyâ*; *fîk*, fem. *fîkî*; *fîh*, fem. *fîhâ*; *fînâ*, *fîkum*, *fîhum*; with article *fil*.

*fîh*, there is, there are; *māfîš*, there is not, there are not.

*fôq*, on, upon, above, upstairs, over: *fôq min*, above; *fôq 'an*, higher than; *min fôq*, from above: e. g. *fôq min eššagarât dôl*, over these trees; *min fôq eššágara*, from above the tree.

*ganb* (pronounced *gamb*), beside.

*gûwa*, inside.

*hawālén*, round about: before suffixes *hawālê* (*hawwālê*).

*hârig*, externally.

*illâ*, except.

*qabl*, before (time).

*quddâm*, before (place).

*quššâd*, opposite.

*gêr*, except, with the exception of.

*lî*, sign of dative, to, for; *liḥaddâm*, to the servant; with the suffixes *lî* (*lîyâ*), *lak*, fem. *lik*; *loh*, fem. *lâhâ*; *lînâ*, *lûkum*, *lûhum* (these forms also do duty for our verb 'have': *lî bêt*, I have a house); *liḥâdd*, until.

*mâ'a*, *mâ'*, *mî'*, with: with suffixes *mî'âyâ*, *mî'âk*, *mî'âh*, and so forth; *mâ'a zâlik*, in spite of.

*min*, from, out of, than, since; doubles its *n* in a manner similar to 'an (q. v.); also its *n* assimilates itself like the *l* of the article: e. g. *missâ'a ḥâmsâ*, since five o'clock.

*naḥw*, towards (direction) = *linâḥye*.

*tab'*, belonging to.

*taḥt*, under, underneath, downstairs: *min taḥt*, from under; *wēbâšš elkâlb min taḥt elfarš*, and the dog looked out from under the sofa.

*ṭûl*, during: *ṭûl elyôm*, all through the day.

*wâ*, *wê* (in oaths) by: e. g. *winnâbî*, By the Prophet!

*wâya*, with; *wayâyâ*, with me.

*wârâ*, behind.

*wuṣṭ*, *fī wuṣṭ*, in the middle: e. g. *fī wuṣṭ essūq*, in the middle of the market.

We specially recommend the study of the following expressions, which will simplify the translation of Arabic prepositions.

Hang up on	<i>‘allaq bi</i>
Stick to	<i>līziq bi</i>
Write to some one	<i>kātab liwāḥid</i>
Doubt something	<i>šakk fī ḥāga</i>
Rejoice at	<i>fīriḥ bi</i>
Knock at the door	<i>ḥābaṭ ‘albāb</i>
Recognize by something	<i>‘irif min ḥāga</i>
Be ill of	<i>mīriḍ min</i>
Die of	<i>māt min</i>
Small of stature	<i>zūḡāyir elḡāme</i>
Lay one's hand on	<i>kābas ‘ala</i>
Marry with	<i>itḡāuwiz bi</i>
The donkey with his burden	<i>elḥomār biḥāmāloh</i>
Hit with something	<i>ḍārab biḥāga</i>
Go by train	<i>rāḥ bisikket elḥadīd</i>
By permission	<i>bil'izn</i>
Rice with meat	<i>rúzzē billaḥm</i>
Meat with potatoes	<i>lāḥmē bilbaṭāṭis</i>
Introduce to	<i>‘arraḥ bi</i>
Give an order for	<i>wāssā bi</i>
In pencil	<i>bīḡālam ruṣāṣ</i>
In the Soudan	<i>fī bilād essūdān</i>
In my whole life	<i>ṭūl ‘ómri</i>
Be on the point of doing something	<i>rāḥ yī‘mil ḥāga</i>
In the immediate future	<i>‘an qarīb</i>
In the beginning	<i>‘āuwāl, ‘auwālan</i>
From now on	<i>dihwāqtē werá iḥ</i>
Laugh in somebody's face	<i>ḍīḥik ‘āla dáqnoh</i>
As you please	<i>bīkēḥak ; oftener ‘āla kēḥak</i>
As you wish	<i>bīḥāṭirak (bīḥāṭirak)</i>

To the village	<i>lilbālād</i> (more frequently the simple accusative)
Towards your parents' house	<i>'ala bét áhlik</i>
Look at	<i>baṣṣ 'ála</i>
To the left	<i>'aššemál</i>
To the right	<i>'ala 'lyemín</i>
Go to	<i>ráh, ráuwah, sáfir</i> (with the accusative)
Ask after	<i>sa'al 'ala</i> (or <i>'an</i> )
Make inquiries about	<i>istáfhim hága; istáhbar 'an</i>
Something smells of . . .	<i>hága líhā ríhet el . . .</i>
Swear by	<i>hílif bi</i>
By God!	<i>billáhi!</i>
By the life of the Prophet!	<i>wahyát ennābī!</i>
By day, by night	<i>binnahár, billél</i>
At table	<i>'and (ganb) eṭṭarabéze</i>
Have you upon you?	<i>'andákšē?</i>
Amongst Europeans	<i>'and el'ifrāng</i>
Go to some one	<i>ráh li'ándē wáhid</i>
In Cairo	<i>bī maṣr</i> (not common)
At the time of . . .	<i>fī waqt el . . .</i>
Look out of window	<i>báṣṣē min eššibák</i>
For example, e.g.	<i>másalan</i>
Love for	<i>mehábbe li</i>
For how much?	<i>bikám?</i>
At the price	<i>biláman</i>
Two metres away	<i>be'id bimetrén</i>
At . . . piastres	<i>bi . . . qirš</i>
Send for the doctor	<i>nádah lilhakím</i>
Lift a thing on the top of something	<i>šál hága 'ála še</i>
In the street	<i>filháre</i>
In the open (country)	<i>firríf, filhála</i>
On the roof	<i>fóq essaṭḥ</i>
At his expense	<i>'ála kísoh</i>
Rely on some one	<i>i'támad 'ála</i>

In Arabic	<i>biṭ'arabī</i>
Out of the house	<i>min elbēt</i>
Suddenly	<i>'āla gāfle</i>
Upon this condition	<i>'āla 'ššart dā</i>
Never mind, it does not matter	<i>mā 'alēhš</i>
If it is so	<i>'iza kán 'āla kídā</i>
In every case	<i>'āla kullī ḥāl</i>
Agree upon	<i>ittāfaq 'ala kídā</i>
Make a contract with	<i>šaraṭ wáyā</i>
Tell about	<i>ḥaka 'ala</i>
Enlighten upon	<i>zāhhar 'ala</i>
Call to	<i>nādah li</i>
Desire from	<i>ṭālab min</i>
Prevent from	<i>māna' 'an</i>
Inquire into	<i>kāšaf 'an, istákšaf 'an</i>
Delay something	<i>'āhḥar 'an</i>
Lazy at	<i>tānbal 'an (or fī)</i>
Moreover, besides that	<i>fāḍlan 'an zālik</i>
Distinguish from	<i>māiyiz 'an</i>
Hide oneself from	<i>istahābb min</i>
The relationship with	<i>elqúrbe min</i>
Since a long time	<i>min zamān</i>
Lose one's temper with	<i>ingāz min</i>
Distinct from	<i>muḥtálif min</i>
Of the race of . . .	<i>min qabíle el . . .</i>
He belongs to us	<i>šār mínna</i>
Full of	<i>malyān min (or with accusative)</i>
Reflect upon	<i>iflákár fī</i>
A book about . . .	<i>kiláb fī . . .</i>
Who of you ( <i>qui parmi vous</i> )	<i>mín fikum</i>

Parsing is of great use for obtaining a correct knowledge of grammar. We therefore give a few sentences, which we strongly recommend the student to analyse with as much detail as possible.

*elbēt dā bēt li'abúyā*, This house is one of my father's houses. (Observe the Arabic rendering of the genitive.)

*ab'át-lak ḥaddám lī'ammī*, I am sending you a servant of my uncle's.

*lá, yá ḥawága, elḥáqqē 'alék, elḥáqqē fī 'ī' d elqādī*, No, Sir, you are wrong, the judge is right.

*elḥáqqē 'alēnā lāzim nīdfá*, We are wrong, we must pay.

*bá'de má 'ilī*, *gá-ni ḥaddámoh*, After he had gone his servant came to me.

*lamma 'lḥakīm símī' kīdā, qál liḥaddámoh, hát essikkīne*, When the doctor heard that, he said to his servant: Give the knife.

*dáḥalū el'etnén rigál 'ala 'lqādī*, The two men went in to the judge.

*baṣṣ elwáḥid 'ala 'lbáḥr weqál ettánī: qúm yá ḥabībī lāzīm nā nerúḥ*, The one looked out over the sea, and the other said: Rise up, Oh my friend! We must be off.

*gum lilbír, weqál erre'ís, éllī 'aṣṣán yíṣrab*, They came to the well and the captain said: Whoever is thirsty drinks.

*qáletloh elbīnt tá'ále yá 'amm, ána 'áuze 'uqd*, The girl said to him: Come, uncle, I want a necklace.

*dáḥal óḍa elqādī šūwáye weṣ'ílī' mínḥā 'áḥmar elwíṣṣ*, He went into the judge's room a little and came out from it red in the face.

In the following sentences especial attention should be paid to the agreement of the verb with its subject.

*elḥarāmīye hágamet ennág'ē wēsáraqet mínnoh áṣye*, The thieves attacked the camp and stole things from it.

*nás dáḥalet héne fī'nnehár eggúm'a*, The people came in here on Friday.

*ḥīye gálnā mirsál min 'and 'uḥtínā*, She came to us (as) messenger from our sister.

*elbanát gum 'ala báḥ elbustán*, The girls came to the garden-gate.

*dánnoh lá'ib lámmā ḥúlṣet elḥámsa*, He continued playing (*lī'ib, a*) until the five (viz. paras) were finished.

*gat 'ahl elbálād lilqādī*, The people of the village came to the judge.

*mīṣyet errigál quddámoh weráḥū sáwa lilgámi'*, The men went before him, and they went together to the mosque.



*nízilet ennds mesāfrīn 'almaşr bilwabūr*, The people who were travelling to Cairo by steamer came down.

*tāh fiġābe wēqābilūh elmeşā'ih*, He lost his way in the wood and the sheikhs met him.

*bēlīhbir elgurnālāt in qāşlet kordofān hāgamū 'alēhā el'ārab biddūhum yinhabūhā*, The papers announce that the Bedawīn attacked the caravan for Kordofān and wanted to plunder it.

*kān wāḥid mār'a fī maşr*, There was a woman in Cairo.

*kān şān'atak ē?* What was your trade?

The following sentences are illustrative of the manner of expressing 'so that, that' in Arabic.

*simī't innak 'ā'uz tişţirī ḥuşān*, I have heard that you want to buy a horse.

*'irbuṭ kullī šē ṭāyib min şān mā yusqūṭşē šē fēyinkīşir*, Bind everything well together so that nothing falls and gets broken.

*hoṭṭē seggāde 'alēh 'alaşān āq'od mālīh*, Place a carpet upon it so that I may sit comfortably.

*iḥtirisū in mā yisriqūlinā šē*, Take care that no one steals anything from us.

*qāblē kullī šē dīr bālak 'ala in kullī šē yekūn ḥāḍir*, Before everything be careful that all is ready.

*'ā'uz minnak tebī-ṭī ṭaqm min şān ḥuşānī*, I would like you to buy me harness for my horse.

For the sake of completeness we here give a few every-day phrases and greetings.

#### GREETINGS.

	<i>essalām 'alēk ('alēkum)</i>	Peace be upon thee (you)!
Ans.	<i>wē'alēk ('alēkum) essalām</i>	And upon you be peace!
	<i>şabāḥ bilḥēr</i>	Good morning!
Ans.	<i>yīşabbāḥak (allāh) bilḥēr</i>	May (God) grant thee a good morning!
	<i>nahārak sa'id</i>	May thy day be fortunate! (Good day!)
Ans.	<i>nahārak mubārak</i>	May thy day be blessed!

<i>mise 'lhér</i>	Good evening !
<i>léltak sa'ide</i>	Good night !
<i>mārḥaba</i> (or <i>áhlan we-</i> <i>sáhlán</i> )	Welcome !
Ans. <i>marḥabatén</i>	Twice welcome !

## HEALTH.

<i>ezáy ḥálak ? ezáyak ?</i>	How do you do ?
<i>ána ṭáiyib biḥér</i>	I am perfectly well.
<i>wē'iyáḏlak ('ahlē bétak) ezáy</i> <i>aḥwálhum ?</i>	And how are your family ?

## ILLNESS.

<i>'ándak é ?</i>	What have you ?
<i>kán 'ándak é ?</i>	What was the matter with you ?
<i>bitūgá'nī rásī</i>	I have a headache.
<i>'én eššimál (elyemín) wāgí'anī</i>	My left (right) eye pains me.
<i>ána mazkúm</i>	I have a cold.
<i>ána mabḥúḥ</i>	I am hoarse.
<i>bitūgá'nī 'isná'nī</i>	I have toothache.
<i>indah lilḥakím, min šán yiqḷā-lī</i> <i>eḏḏirs elmēsáuwās</i>	Call the doctor, that he may pull out the hollow tooth.
<i>ḥádnī bard</i> (cold has taken me)	I have caught cold.
<i>rāqablī bitūgá'nī</i>	I have a pain in my neck.
<i>essá'le biṭ'azzílnī</i>	I am troubled by a cough.
<i>bitūgá'nī báṭnī</i>	I have a pain in my stomach.
<i>bī mágaš</i>	I have colic.
<i>līye túḥme</i>	I feel ill.
<i>ámār wáḥid bídáwā</i>	Prescribe medicine for some one.
<i>elḥakím bíšúfnī</i>	The doctor is visiting me.
<i>ána maḥmúm</i>	I have fever.
<i>ḥaff, yehíff</i>	Get well.
<i>miriḏ, a</i>	Get ill, be ill.

## WEATHER.

<i>elháwā</i>	Weather, climate, air.
<i>eddúnyā</i>	World, weather.

*elháwā mālīḥ*

*elháwā baṭṭāl*

*elháwā hādī*

*essāmā šáfyē*

*eddúnyä dūlme*

*eddúnyä šābūra*

*beyínzil ennáṭar (elmáṭar)*

*elhárre šādīd*

*ána ḥarrán*

*ána 'arqán*

*ḥa tíḥsul šawá'iq*

*barq, pl. burúq*

*errá'd*

*bítúbruq wēbítúr'ud*

*eddúnyä bard*

*bihúbbe ríḥ šedīd*

*bīyúqa' elbárad*

*ennahárdä biṣír gälīd*

*dāb elgälīd*

*elháwa mutgáiyar min sá'a līsá'a*

*nášaf elwáhl*

*ennáṭar fát*

*ennáṭar yínqaṣ*

It is good weather.

It is bad weather.

It is quite still. (There is not a breath of wind.)

The sky is clear.

It is dark.

It is cloudy.

Rain is falling.

It is very hot.

I feel hot.

I am perspiring.

A storm is coming.

Lightning.

Thunder.

It is lightning and thundering.

It is cold.

There is a strong wind blowing.

It is hailing.

It is freezing to-day.

It has thawed.

The weather is changing from hour to hour.

The mud has dried up.

The rain is over.

The rain is stopping.

# READING MATTER.

## I. Hikāyât.

### STORIES.

#### I.

From Spitta-Bey's *Grammatik des arabischen Vulgärdialektes in Ägypten*.

*kān*<sup>1</sup>                      *rāgil*                      *rūziq*                      *bîwālād*  
(There) was              (a) man              he was blessed              with (a) child  
*wefirîḥ-boh*<sup>2</sup>.

and he rejoiced at it.

*kān*                      *biddoh*<sup>3</sup>                      *yîsterî-loh*                      *mahd.*                      *rāḥ*  
He was              wishing              he buys for him              (a) cradle.              He went  
*liwāḥid*                      *naggār*                      *wadd'-loh*                      *másalan*                      *riyāl*  
to a              carpenter              and gave him              for example              (a) dollar  
*wēqāl-loh*                      *i' mîl-lî*                      *mahd.*                      *qāl-loh*  
and said to him:              Make me              (a) cradle.              Said to him

*'n-naggār*                      *ṭaiyib*                      *nahār*                      *elgúm'a*                      *ta'āla*  
the carpenter:              Good!              day              of the week (Friday)              come  
*wēḥód*                      *elmáhd*                      *yā'nî*                      *bá'dē*                      *temánt*                      *iyám*  
and take              the cradle,              that is to say              after              eight              days,

*kān*                      *elḥamîs.*                      *nahār elgúm'a*                      *errāgil*                      *rāḥloh*  
it was              Thursday.              (On) Friday              the man              went to him

*wēqāl-loh*                      *hât*                      *elmáhd.*                      *qāl-loh*  
and said to him:              Give (me)              the cradle.              Said to him

*'nnaggār*                      *lîssā*                      *muš ḥalûs.*                      *wēl'áḥḥar*                      *ennaggār*  
the carpenter:              Yet              not              ready.              And delayed              the carpenter

*lammā mīšī elwālād wekībir wegáuwiz wastáulid*  
till walked the boy and grew up and married and begat

*wālād qál li'abúh 'á'uz mahd líbnī.*  
(a) boy. He said to his father I want (a) cradle for my son.

*qállōh abúh rúh ennaggár elfulání<sup>4</sup>*  
Said to him his father: Go (to) the carpenter So-and-so,

*ána waṣṣétōh<sup>5</sup> bímáhd yíbqa<sup>6</sup> dihváqtē*  
I have commissioned him for (a) cradle, it is now

*'ašrín sānā hódoh mínnoh. ráh*  
twenty years (ago), take it from him. He went

*ennaggár qál-loh hát elmáhd éllī*  
(to) the carpenter, he said to him: Give me the cradle which

*waṣṣák-boh<sup>7</sup> 'abúya wadá-lak*  
has commissioned you for it my father and has given you

*riyál. qál-loh 'naggár hód erriyál*  
(a) dollar. Said to him the carpenter take the dollar,

*mā aḥíbbiš astāgil eššúgl.*  
I do not like I hurry the work.

## II.

ONE OF THE ANECDOTES ABOUT ABŪ-NUWÂS, COURT  
POET TO THE CALIPH HĀRŪN ER-RASHĪD.

From Probst: *Arabischer Sprachführer in ägyptischem Dialekt.*

*márra kán 'ábū-nuwâs qá'id wáya 'lmálik*  
Once was Abū-Nuwâs sitting with the king

*hārūn errašíd wekánēt eddúnjá bárdē<sup>1</sup> qáwī.*  
Hārūn er-Rashīd, and was the world (weather) cold very.

*feqál elmálik l'ábū-nuwâs yimkinákšē<sup>2</sup>*  
And said the king to Abū-Nuwâs: Is it possible for you

*tibát kull elléla-di 'aryán malt fôq essutûh*  
 you spend all this night naked quite upon the roofs ?

*wê'in³ qidîrt ân'âm⁴ 'alék*  
 And if you can (could), I will show favour (upon) you

*bîhâga kûwaiyise. feqállloh 'abû-nuwâs*  
 with (some)thing beautiful. Then said to him Abû-Nuwâs :

*nâ'am yâ mâlik essa'âda 'âqdar. wefuâqtuh⁵*  
 Yes, O King of good fortune, I can. And in his time

*îlî\* fôq essutûh wemâdâda kull elléle*  
 he went up upon the roofs and passed all the night

*'aryán fî lbârd wannâfara. yi'âh'ah 'aryán*  
 naked in the cold and the rain. He cried out Ah ! naked

*zâymâ wildétoh 'ûmmoh. wetânî yôm*  
 as bore him his mother. And the next (second) day

*lâmmâ îlî\* ennahâr wêgî yişâbbah⁶*  
 when rose the day and he came he wishes Good morning

*'almâlik, sâ'aloh 'lmâlik ezây lélak kânet*  
 to the king, asked him the king : How thy night was she,

*yâbu-nuwâs fegâuboh⁷ kânet bârdē*  
 O Abû-Nuwâs ? And he answered him : It was cold

*qâwî hâliş wetûl ellél bitt*  
 very very and the (whole) length of the night I spent

*artâ'îš. fêš'aloh elmâlik bâga*  
 I shiver. And asked him the king : Then you did

*mâddafêlîš⁸ 'ala hâga wêlâ šûftîš*  
 not warm yourself over (any) thing : and not have you seen

*nâr wêlâ nûr wêlâ hâga âbâdân ?*  
 fire and not light and not anything at all (never) ?

*fêqállloh šuft 'ala mādād eššóf*  
 And he said to him : I saw in the distance of the view

*nūr qandil zēt ḍāʾif fēqállōh ʾlmālik : bāqa*  
light lamp oil feeble. And said to him the king : Then

*ʾddafēt<sup>9</sup> ʾalēh walá tistaháqqiṣ*  
you have warmed yourself over it and not do you deserve

*anʾamiya fēhārag ʾabū-nuwás miḥkaddar elḥāfir.*  
favour. Then went out Abū-Nuwás troubled in spirit.

*wēbaʾdihā bikām yóm dabbárloh ḥile*  
And hereafter in some days he arranged for himself a piece

*wēʾazzim elmālik fiʾakl wekánet*  
of cunning and invited the king to dinner and was

*eʾozúme fiʾlhála. fēlammā gá waqt elʾákl*  
the banquet in the open. And when came the time of the meal

*wekán elmālik gaʾán fēsáʾal abū-nuwás*  
and was the king hungry and asked Abū-Nuwás :

*fēn elʾákl ? qállōh ḥāḍir kāmān*  
Where is the dinner ? He said to him : Ready, still

*lāḥze lámmā yistwī eṭṭabīḥ. fēsáʾaloh*  
a moment until becomes ready the cooking. And asked

*elmālik tánī mārra wētálit mārra wekán*  
him the king a second time and a third time, and was

*elwáqt miʾáḥḥar baʾd eʾáṣr. wegáʾ*  
the time delaying after the afternoon. And hungered

*elmālik qáwī fēkán gawáb abū-nuwás*  
the king very much ; and was answer of Abū-Nuwás

*ḍáʾiman : eṭṭabīḥ líssā māstarwás<sup>10</sup> yá*  
always : The cooked stuff not yet is ready, O

*mālik essaʾáda. fēʾággib elmālik wēqállōh*  
king of good fortune. And wondered the king and said to him :

*warrínī eṭṭabīḥ dā ámmā ʾašúf lé liḥáddi*  
Show me this cookery, so that I see why until



*dilwáqtē māstawāš. qállloh íáiyib! wērdāhum*  
 now it is not ready. He said to him : Good ! And they went

*kullūhum sáwa liháddē máṭraḥ eṭṭabīḥ*  
 all of them together to the place of the cooking ;

*feláqa 'lmālik ennār 'ala'l árḍ fēl'ággib*  
 and found the king the fire on the ground, and was astonished

*wēqállloh fēn elḥālāl*  
 and said to him : Where (are) the pots and pans

*wāṭṭabīḥ? fērāddē 'alēh*  
 and what is being cooked? And he answered back to him :

*yā mālik essa'āde buṣṣ lifōq*  
 O king of good fortune, look up there,

*tilqīhum! fēbaṣṣ laqāhum*  
 you will find them ! And he looked he found them,

*mita'allagīn fōq 'ala'sságar. feqállloh bāqa*  
 hung up above in the trees. And he said to him : Now,

*yā magnún ezáy yistīwī wālḥālāl fi'sságar*  
 O fool, how will it get done and the kettles in the trees

*wē innār 'al'árḍ? fegáuboh ábū-nuwās*  
 and the fire on the ground? And answered him Abū-Nuwās :

*wē ezáy iddafēt min elqandīl élli*  
 And how have I warmed myself from the lamp which

*šúftoh min be'íd? fambásaṭ<sup>11</sup> elmālik*  
 I saw (it) from afar? And was delighted the king

*wemāṭ 'ala rūḥoh min ḍiḥk<sup>12</sup> wīlli*  
 and died over his spirit of laughter ; and those

*wayāḥ ḥāt yā kīrr<sup>13</sup>. wēba'dīhā kán*  
 with him : Give O kīrr. And afterwards was

*'ábū-nuwās muḥáḍḍar 'aklī tánī*  
 Abū-Nuwās bringing in a meal a second (another).

*webā'demā*      *āklum*      *wēšīrbum*      *wimbāsaṭum*.  
 And afterwards    they ate    and they drank    and they made merry  
                          *ān'am*      'alēh    elmālik    bī'aṭṭye    'azīme.  
 together.    Showed favour    to him    the king    with a gift    lovely.

## III.

## SHORT ANECDOTES.

Translated from Wied's *Turkish Grammar* <sup>a</sup>.

1.    *adī*      'rriyāl      elli      lak      'āndī<sup>1</sup>      min  
       Here is    the dollar    which    to you (is)    with me    since  
*embāreh*.  
 yesterday.

*īaiyib*,    *qabl*    *kūntē*    *nisītoḥ*<sup>2</sup>.  
 Good,    already    I was    I forgot it.

*mā*    *qultōš*    *auwālan*    *lē?*  
 Not    you said so    before    why?

2.    *kān*      *rāgil*      *ištāra*      *sā'a*    'alašān    nāfsoḥ  
       There was    a man,    he bought    a watch    for    himself,  
*wētamānhā*      *ḥamastāšār*    *riyāl*<sup>1</sup>.      *fēgāb*  
 and its price (was)      fifteen      dollars.      And he gave

*lissā'ātī*      *ḥāmsā*    *riyālāt*<sup>2</sup>      *wēqālloḥ*  
 to the watchmaker      five      dollars,      and said to him

*aḡdāllak*      *eḷ'āšara*    *riyālāt*    *madyūn*<sup>b</sup>    *ba'd*    *kām*  
 I remain to you (for) the ten    dollars    debtor.    After    some

*yōm*      *essā'ātī*      *īālab*      *mīnnoh*      *elmāblaḡ*  
 days    the watchmaker    demanded    from him    the sum

*elbāqī*.  
 remaining.

<sup>a</sup> Published by A. Hartleben, Vienna, Buda-Pesth, and Leipzig.

<sup>b</sup> i. e. I am still your debtor to the extent of ten dollars (and mean to remain so). The point is that he wishes to *remain* his debtor.

*qállōh*      *errāgil*      *māqdārš*      *adfālak*      *bíddi*  
Said to him      the man :      I cannot      (I) pay you,      I wish

*afḍállak*      *madyún.*  
I remain to you      debtor.

3.    *kán*      *rāgil*      *‘āuz*      *yezúr*      *ḥabíboh*  
There was      a man      wanting      he visits      his friend,

*wēfiḍil*      *yedúqq*<sup>1</sup>      *elbáb*      *lákin*  
and he remained      (he knocks) knocking      (at) the door,      but

*má*    *yinfiliḥš*      *elbáb.*      *elbáiyin*      *māḥáddiš*      *kán*  
not      was opened      the door.      It seems      no one      was

*fi’lbét.*  
in the house.

*errāgil-dā*    *gá*      *min*      *bālād*      *be’ide*      *ketír*  
This man      came      from      a village      distant      very,

*wēbissābāb-di*      *ithāmaq*      *wēkátāb*      *ḥomár*      *‘ala*  
and on this account      he got angry      and wrote      ‘donkey’      on

*báb*      *elbét.*  
the door      of the house.

*bā’d*    *kám*    *yóm*    *iltāqa*    *ṣāḥib*    *elbét*  
After      some      days      he met      the master      of the house,

*wēkán*      *bénhum*      *mēḥáwara*    *fēqál*    *elwáḥid*  
and there was      between them      conversation,      and said      the one

*kúntē*    *‘ándak*    *yibqā*    *kám*    *yóm*    *wēmá*    *kúntiš*  
I was      at your place      ago      some      days,      and not      thou wast

*fi’lbét.*  
in the house.

*fēgáuboh*      *el‘āḥar*    *áiwa*    *kán*    *kídā.*  
Then answered him      the other,      yes,      it was      so.

*min*    *‘én*    *beti’raf*    *inni*<sup>2</sup>    *kúntē*    *‘ándak?*  
From      where      do you know      that I      was      at your house?

*katábt 'ismak fôq elbáb.*  
You wrote your name over the door.

4. *kán rágil šáf túrbe řawíle ketír.*  
There was a man he saw a grave long very.

*fěsá'al limín ettúrbe eřawíle*  
And he asked: To whom (whose is) the grave the long

*di? fěqālúloh lılbeiraqdár<sup>1</sup> fěsá'al*  
this? And they said to him: to the standard-bearer. And asked

*errágil dafanúh<sup>2</sup> wáya 'lbeiraq?*  
the man: they buried him with the flag?

5. *kán rágil kátab maktúb liřabíboh*  
There was a man he wrote a letter to his friend,

*wěqál liřaddámoh řod elmaktúb dā wěřódoh*  
and he said to his servant: take the letter this, and take it

*lı'ánd elřawága elfúlán.*  
to the gentleman So-and-so.

*rígi' elřaddám bád ráb'e sá'a*  
Came back the servant after a quarter of an hour.

*fěsá'al elřawága řadl*  
And asked the gentleman [subject to the verb]: did you take

*elřawáb li'ándē řabíbi?*  
the letter to my friend?

*áiwa ařádtoh.*  
Yes, I took it.

*sällämtólôh?<sup>1</sup>*  
Did you give it to him?

*řálaboh welákin ána mādētólôš<sup>2</sup>.*  
He demanded it, but I did not give it to him.

*lı'áiyi sább?*  
For what reason?

*qultīlī*                      *ḥódoh*                      *lākin*                      *māqultīlīš*  
 You said to me,              take it,              but              you did not tell me :  
*sällāmóloh*              *'aḥádtoh*                      *wēwarrētóloh* <sup>3</sup>                      *min*              *bē'id*  
 Give it him ;              I took it              and showed it to him              from              afar  
*wēraggá'toh*                      *mi'áye*                      *tānī.*  
 and brought it back              with me              again.  
*ḥallétoḥ*                      *yiqráḥ ?* <sup>4</sup>                      *lá !*  
 You let him              he reads it ?              No !  
*elḥawāga*                      *ḍiḥik.*  
 The gentleman              laughed.  
*mā qállákš*                      *ḥāga ?*  
 Did he not say to you              anything ?  
*áiwa*                      *qállī*                      *ḥomār*                      *lākin*                      *mā*                      *fihimtiš*  
 Yes,              he said to me              ' Ass,'              but              I did              not understand  
*'íza*                      *qáloh*                      *'ilī*                      *áo*                      *'ilak.*  
 if              he said it              for me              or              for you.

## IV.

## STORY OF THE PRINCE IN LOVE.

From Spitta-Bey's *Contes arabes modernes* : Leyden. E. J. Brill, 1883.

*kán*                      *fīḥ*                      *wáḥde*                      *lá*                      *bētīḥbal* <sup>1</sup>                      *wála* <sup>2</sup>  
 There              was              a woman (who)              neither              conceived              nor  
*bētúlíd* <sup>3</sup>                      *qámet* <sup>4</sup>                      *iṭṭálabet*                      *mirrabbíhā* <sup>5</sup>  
 brought forth.              Now              she petitioned              (from) her God  
*wegálet*                      *aḥīnī* <sup>6</sup>                      *bint*                      *waláu* <sup>7</sup>                      *temút*  
 and said :              Give me              a daughter              even if              she dies  
*mirríḥet* <sup>8</sup>                      *elkittán.*                      *qámet*                      *ḥáblet*                      *wēwíldet*  
 from the smell              of linen.              Now              she conceived              and bore  
*elbín.*                      *lammā*                      *kíbet*                      *bāqa*                      *'umráhā*  
 the girl.              When              she grew up              (and) now              her age              (was)

*'āšara sinīn fā'it ibn elmālik*  
 ten years, passed (passing) by the son of the king  
*min elḥāre qām šāfhā ṭālle<sup>9</sup> min*  
 in the street. Now he saw her looking out of  
*eššibbāk. qām ḥubbēhā nīzil fī*  
 the window. Now her love (love for her) descended into  
*qālbōh. rāuwaḥ fī'lbēt 'aiyān. itqālibet<sup>10</sup>*  
 his heart. He went away to the house ill. (She) there followed  
*'alēh elḥūkama mā 'irfūš dawāh<sup>11</sup>. qāmet*  
 upon him the doctors not they knew his medicine. Now  
*ṭīlī'et 'āndoh wāḥde 'agūze qālet-loh*  
 went up to him an old woman, she said to him :  
*yā tāra inte 'āšiq<sup>12</sup> wāllā merāfiq<sup>13</sup>*  
 Perhaps you are in love or have a loved one ?  
*qāl-lāhā āna 'āšiq. qālet-loh 'āšiq*  
 He said to her I am in love. She said to him in love with  
*mīn qāl-lāhā 'āšiq bint*  
 whom ? He said to her : I am in love with the daughter  
*ettāgir ell' 'ismīhā sittukān*  
 of the merchant whose (her) name (is) Sittukān.  
*qālet-loh āna 'agibhā-lak. fēnīzlet*  
 She said to him : I will bring her to you. And went down  
*el'agūze qāblet-hā wāqfe<sup>14</sup> 'ala'lbāb.*  
 the old woman and met her standing at the door.  
*qālet-lāhā yā bīnī intī kūwaiyise*  
 She said to her : Oh my daughter you are beautiful  
*gāradik<sup>15</sup> tif'allīmī 'and elme'allime*  
 your desire (is that) you learn (at) from the mistress <sup>a</sup>  
*betā' elkittān. rāḥet elbīnt 'and 'ummēhā*  
 belonging to the linen. Went the girl to her mother ;

<sup>a</sup> i. e. the woman that teaches the linen-trade.

*qālet-lāhā*      *waddīnī*      *yāmma*      *f'lmē'allime !*  
she said to her :      Lead me,      O mother,      to the mistress !

*qālet-lāhā*      *elmē'allime*      *enhī ?*      *qālet-lāhā*  
She said to her :      The mistress      which ?      She said to her :

*mē'allimt*<sup>16</sup>      *elkittān.*      *qālet-lāhā*      *yā*      *bīntī*  
The mistress      of linen.      She said to her :      Oh      my daughter

*bā'dén*      *temūfī.*      *qālet-lāhā*      *lā*      *māmūš*<sup>17.</sup>  
afterwards      you will die.      She said to her :      No,      I will not die.

*bā'atēihā*      'ummēhā      'and      *elmē'allime*      *betāht*<sup>18</sup>      *elkittān.*  
Sent her      her mother      to      the mistress      of      the linen.

*qā'idē*      *tenāffad*      *f'l'kittān*<sup>19.</sup>      *qāmet*      *dāḥalet*  
She (was) sitting      she cleans      (in) the linen.      Now      entered

*qaššāye*      *min*      *elkittān*      *fī*      *šbāḥhā*<sup>20</sup>      *bēn*      *ellāḥm*  
a thread      from      the linen      into      her finger      between      the flesh

*wedḍūfr.*      *wīqī'et*      *fī'l'arḍ.*      *qālū*      'alēhā  
and the nail.      She fell      to the ground.      They said      about her :

*mālet.*      *bā'atū*      *lummēhā*      *wabūhā*  
She has died.      They sent      to her mother      and her father,

*qālū-lhum*      *tā'dlū*      *šlū*      *bintākum*  
they said to them :      Come ye ;      take away      your daughter,

*mālet.*      *rāḥ*      *abūhā*      *wummēhā*      *wēnās*  
she has died.      Went      her father      and her mother      and people

*wayāhā*      'aššān<sup>21</sup>      *yidfinūhā.*      *qāmet*      *e'agāze*  
with her      in order to      they bury her.      Now      the old woman

*qālet-lūhum*      *īntū*      *nās*      *qadrīn*      *muš*      'ēb  
said to them :      You are      people      rich ;      not      shame

'alēkū      *rāḥ*<sup>22</sup>      *tīdfinūhā*      *taḥt*      *e'l'arḍē*  
upon you <sup>a</sup>      you are going to      (you) bury her      under      the earth

*f'tturāb ?*      'ibnū-lhā      *serqyā*      *fī*      *wasṭ*      *elbāḥr*  
in the dust ?      Build for her      a palace      in      middle      of the river

<sup>a</sup> Are you not ashamed to . . . ?



*wēkállēmā*      *titwahhāšū*<sup>23</sup>      *lāhā*      *terāhū*      *lešūfūhā.*  
and as often as    you have a desire    for her    you go    you see her.

*rāh*      *abūhā*      *band-lhā*      *serāye*      *fī*      *wasṭ*  
Went    her father    built for her    a palace    in    the middle

*elbāhr*      *‘ala*      *eḷamāwīd*      *‘āmal-lhā*      *genéne*  
of the river      on      pillars,      he made for her      a garden

*gūwāhā.*      *wēšālū*      *‘lbīnī*      *haṭṭūhā*      *gūwa*  
inside it.    And they carried away    the girl    laid her    in

*‘sserīr*      *gūwa*      *‘sserāyā*      *wēfātūhā*      *wēmīšyum.*  
the bed,    inside    the palace ;    and left her    and went away.

*rāhet*      *eḷagūze*      *lībīn*      *elmālik*      *qālet-loh*  
Went    the old woman    to the son    of the king    she said to him :

*rūh*      *šūfhā*      *hīye*      *fī*      *‘sserāye*      *fī*      *wasṭ*  
Go !    See her !    She (is)    in    the palace    in    the middle

*elbāhr.*      *fībīn*<sup>24</sup>      *elmēlik*      *ḥad*      *elwazīr*  
of the river.    Then the son    of the king    took    the vizier

*werāh*      *wēḷīlī*      *‘andīhā*      *fōq.*  
(with him) and went    and went up    to her    upstairs.

*iltaqāhā*      *maiṣīle.*      *qā‘ad*      *yī‘āiyaṭ*      *‘alēhā*  
He found her    dead.    He sat    he weeps    over her

*weyeqūl*      *aš‘ār*      *‘alēhā*      *fīlgamāl.*  
and he says    verses    over her    concerning (her) beauty.

*māsikhā*      *biqāllīb*      *fīhā.*  
He took hold of her,    he turned her    (in every direction).

*qām*      *mīsīk*      *‘īdhā*      *bīyūrīhā*<sup>25</sup>  
Now    he caught hold of    her hand    he shows it

*lilwazīr*      *wēyeqūl*      *šūf*      *rufaiya‘īn*      *ezāy*  
to the vizier    and he says :    See,    slight    how (how slight

*qām*      *iltāqa*      *‘lqaššāya*      *betā*      *elkittān*  
they are) !    Now    he found    the thread    from    the linen

*bén*            *eḏḏúfr*            *welláhm,*            *qám*            *natáshhā*  
between      the nail      and the flesh,      now      he took it out

*wetallā hā (wētallāhhā).*    *qámet*    *elbintē*    *qā'ide*    *'ala hēlhā* <sup>26</sup>  
and made it come out.    Now    the girl    sitting    upright

*qálet-loh*            *ána*            *fēn ?*            *qál-láhā*            *inti*  
said to him :      I (am)      where ?      He said to her :      You are

*'andī*            *yā*            *habībet*            *qálbī.*            *hádhdhā*  
with me,      O      loved one      of my heart.      He took her

*wēnám*            *wayáhhā*            *fi'sserír*            *arba'in*    *yóm*    *tamám*  
and slept      with her      in the bed      forty      days      exactly.

*nízil*            *taht*            *illáqa*            *'lwazír*            *qā'id*  
He went down      downstairs      he found      the vizier      sitting

*bistannāh.*            *fil'um*            *min*            *elbáb*            *gúwa*  
waiting for him.      They went out      from      the door      into

*'lgenéne.*    *qābílhum*    *elwárdē*            *walyasmín.*    *qám*    *'ibn*  
the garden.    Met them    the rose    and the jasmine.    The son

*elmélik*            *qál*            *lilwazír*            *bálak*            *elwárdē*  
of the king      said      to the vizier      do you remember      the rose

*walyasmín*            *zéyi*            *bayáḏ*            *sittukán*  
and the jasmine      (are) like      the whiteness      of Sittukān

*welwárdē*            *zéyi*            *hudúdhā.*  
and the rose      (is) like      her cheeks.

*yá rét* <sup>27</sup>            *elgáḏab*            *mā kán*  
If you will not be    angry with me    (I shall stay with her)

*waláu*            *kamán*            *tálat*            *'iyám.*  
even though it be      but      three days      more.

*filí*            *qā'id*            *'andihā*            *tálat*            *'iyám.*            *nízil*  
He went up      sitting      with her      three      days.    He came down

*wēmišī*            *húwa*            *walwazír.*            *qábletoh*            *ságart*  
and walked      he      and the vizier.      Met him      a tree

*elḥarrúb.*                      *qállōh*                      *bálak*  
of carob-beans.              He said to him <sup>a</sup>:              Do you remember

*elḥarrúb*    *yá*    *wazír*    *zēyi*    *ḥawágib*    *sittukán* ?  
the carob,    Oh !    vizier, is like    the eyebrows    of Sittukán ?

*yá rét elgádab má kán*  
*waláu kamán tálat 'iyám.*

*ḥili*              *qá'id*    *'andihā*    *tálat*    *'iyám*              *wenízil*  
He went up    staying    with her    three    days;    and he came down

*mīšī*              *láqa*              *fasqíye.*              *qálluh*  
he walked              he found              a fountain.              He said to him :

*bálak*              *elfasqíyedi*    *yá*    *wazír*    *zēyi*    *ṣúret*  
Do you remember    this fountain,    Oh !    vizier, is like    the figure

*sittukán* ?  
of Sittukán ?

*yá rét elgádab má kán*  
*waláu kamán tálat 'iyám.*

*qám rígi*              *láhā.*              *kánet*    *híye*              *nízlet*              *min*  
He returned              to her.              Was    she              come down              from

*fóq*              *qálet*              *amm* <sup>28</sup>    *'arúh*              *ašúf*    *húwa*    *bírúh* <sup>29</sup>  
upstairs :    she said    I am    going to    (I) see    he    goes

*wēbírga*              *'ala šán é.*              *nízlet*              *wíqfet*              *wára*  
and comes back              why.              She went down              she stood              behind

*'lbáb*              *webetállē*              *'aléh*    *wēhúwa*              *gá'i*              *bizúqq*  
the door              and looked              at him              and he              coming              pushes

*elbáb.*    *qám*              *šāfhā*              *taffē*              *'aléhā*              *weqál-lāhā*  
the door.    Now    he saw her,    he spat    on her    and said to her :

<sup>a</sup> The prince said to the vizier.

*lómā 'išqik fi 'rrigāl*  
If not your love (was) for men,

*mā kuntīš tiqāfī wāra 'lībān.*  
not you were you place yourself behind the doors.

*wēfāthā wētānnoh<sup>30</sup> māšš. qāmet hīyā*  
And he passed by her and continued walking. Now she

*zī'ilet<sup>31</sup> zā'al<sup>31</sup> šedīd wēmīšyet gūwā 'lgenéne*  
got into a passion violent and went into the garden

*iltāget ḥātim. atā-bīh ḥātim elmulk.*  
she found a ring. Now (that was) the ring of kingdom<sup>a</sup>.

*dā'aket elḥātim. qām qāl-lāhā*  
She rubbed the ring. Now it (the ring) said to her

*lubbēk ēš tuḥlūbī? qālet-loh*  
at your command what do you desire of me? She said to it

*āḥlūb serāye gāmbē serāyet 'ibn elmēlik*  
I desire a palace beside the palace of the king's son

*wētaḥḥīnī<sup>32</sup> gamāl 'āḥsan min gamālī. ṭāllet*  
and you give me beauty better than my beauty. She looked

*iltāget rūḥhā gūwā 'sserāye gāmbē*  
she found herself (her spirit) inside the palace beside

*serāyet 'ibn elmēlik. qāmet ṭāllet min*  
the palace of the king's son. Now she looked out of

*eššibāk. qām šāfhā 'ibn elmēlik 'išīqhā. rāḥ*  
the window. Saw her the king's son he loved her. He went

*l'ummoh wēqāllāha yamma mā'andīkīš*  
to his mother and said to her: Oh! mother, have you not

*ḥāga kūwaiyise tiwaddihā hedīye līssītt*  
something beautiful you take it (as) a present to the lady

<sup>a</sup> i.e. Solomon's ring, by virtue of which he was the sovereign of spirits.

*éllī gat gambīnā di wēteqūlt-lha itgauwīzī*  
 who has come beside us (this) and you tell her: Marry

*'ibnī ? qālet-loh 'andī ṭāqatēn qāṣab*  
 my son? She said to him I have two pieces of brocade

*min butū elmulūk. qāl-lāhā ṭāiyib*  
 from the belongings of the kings. He said to her: Good,

*waddīhā. ferāhet 'ummoh 'andīhā. qālet-lāhā*  
 take it. Then went his mother to her. She said to her:

*yā bīnī iqbālī 'lhedīyedi 'ibnī 'ā'iz*  
 Oh! my daughter, Accept this present my son wishes

*yitgauwizik. qāmet elbīntē nādahet lilgārye*  
 he marries you. The girl called to the (female) slave:

*qālet-lāhā ḥōdī qaṭṭāī dōl 'imsāḥī bīhum*  
 she said to her: Take, cut in pieces these, wipe with them

*elbēt. fenīzlet 'umm 'ibn elmēlik.*  
 the house. Then went away the mother of the king's son.

*qāl-lāhā qālet-lik ē yāmmī ?*  
 He said to her: She said to you what, Oh! my mother?

*qālet-loh dōl nās qadrīn ḥādū mīnnī*  
 She said to him these are people rich; they took from me

*'lqāṣab 'amalūh mamsāḥa betā' elbēt.*  
 the brocade they made of it rags for use in the house.

*qāl-lāhā fī 'ārḍik<sup>33</sup> yāmma.*  
 He said to her: Under your protection, Oh! mother.

*mā 'andikīš kemān ḥāga gāliye tiwaddīhā ?*  
 Have you not still something expensive you take to her?

*qālet-loh āna mā'andīš illa 'ūqdē zumūrrud*  
 She said to him I have not except a necklace (of) emeralds,

*yistāhīl 'ārbaḥt ālāf gīneh. qāl-lāhā*  
 it is worth four thousand guineas. He said to her:

- ṭáiyib waddíh.* *fērāhet* *ṭíli~et-lāhā.*  
 Good, take it (to her). Then she went she went up to her.
- qálet-lāhā* *'iqbālī* *'lhedīye* *yá bínṭī* *'ibnī*  
 She said to her : Accept the gift, Oh ! my daughter, my son
- 'ā'iz* *yilgáuwizik.* *qálet-lāhā* *qibílt*  
 wishes he marries you. She said to her : I have accepted
- elhediye* *yá síltī.* *nádahet* *lilgárye* *qálet-lāhā*  
 the gift, Oh ! my lady. She called to the slave ; she said to her
- elhamám* *kal* *wállā* *lissā ?* *qálet-lāhā* *'lgárye*  
 the pigeons have eaten or not yet? Said to her the slave
- lissā* *yá síltī.* *qálet-lāhā* *ḥódi* *fárrafī* <sup>34</sup>  
 not yet, Oh ! my lady. She said to her : Take, separate
- el'úqde di* *wēdīh* *lilhamám* *yāklúh.*  
 this necklace and give it to the pigeons (that) they eat it.
- qámet* *'ummoh* *zí'ilet* *wēqálet-lāhā* *ínṭī*  
 Now his mother grew angry and said to her : You
- gallibṭīnī* *yá* *bínṭī.* *qúlī-li* *izā* *kúnṭī*  
 have conquered me, Oh ! my daughter ! Tell me if you are
- 'áuze* *titgauwizih* *wállā lā'.* *qálet-lāhā* *izā* *kán*  
 willing you marry him or no. She said to her if it was
- bíddik* *atgauwizoh* *tiḥallih* *yá mil*  
 you wish I marry him let him he makes (pretend to be)
- máiyit* *wetkaffinīh* <sup>35</sup> *fī* *sabāht* *'ikfán* *wetelaffifih*  
 dead and wrap him up in seven shrouds and lead him round
- elbālād* *wetqúlī* *linnās* *mādfinúh* <sup>36</sup> *illā*  
 the town and say to the people they do not bury him except
- fī lbét di.* *qálet-lāhā* *ṭáiyib* *ána aqúl-loh* *yá*  
 in this house. She said to her : Good, I will tell him, Oh !
- bínṭī.* *nízlet.* *qálet-loh* *'ummoh* *izā*  
 my daughter. She went down. Told him his mother : If

*kán biddak titgauwizhā á'mil máiyit*  
it was you wish you marry her make (pretend to be) dead

*wēyikaffinūk fī sabáht 'ikfán<sup>37</sup> wēliff*  
and they will wrap you up in seven shrouds and go around

*elbéled wēta'áde nidfinak 'andihā teqúm*  
the town, and come we will bury you by her then <sup>a</sup>

*titgauwizak. qál-lāhā bessē kide yamma ?*  
she will marry you. He said to her only thus, Oh ! mother ?

*šauwātī wēqúlī 'ibni māt. šauwatet. sín'um*  
Cry and say : My son has died. She cried. Heard

*ennās 'innuh māt 'ibn elmālik itgáma'et<sup>38</sup>*  
the people that he has died the king's son ; collected together

*elfúqara welmešáih wēdāhalū<sup>39</sup>*  
the Koran-singers and the sheikhs and they came in

*gassilūh wē'ummoh qálet-lūhum 'ibnī*  
they washed him ; and his mother said to them : My son

*me'amminnī<sup>40</sup> 'amāne lamm 'amūt kaffinī*  
has imposed upon me an obligation : when I die wrap me up

*fī sabáht 'ikfán wēbá'de mā yeliffū bīye*  
in seven shrouds, and then (when) they go round with me

*elbālād 'idfininī fī 'sserāye éllī gambinā.*  
(round) the town bury me in the palace which (is) beside us.

*fēkaffinūh wēšālūh fī lhāšabe.*  
Then they wrapped him up and bore him in the coffin.

*wēmīšyet<sup>41</sup> quddāmoh 'lmaš'āih wē'áhl elbālād*  
And went before him the sheikhs and people of the place,

*wēlāffū bīh wēgābūh ṭalla'ūh*  
and they went round with him and brought him carried him up

<sup>a</sup> lit. she will get up.



*fī'sserāye*      *betāḥt*      *elbīnt*      *wefātūh*  
 into the palace      belonging to      the girl;      and they left him  
*wēnīzlum.*      *dāḥalet*      'āndoh      ḥället      mīnnoh  
 and went away.      She came in      to him      loosed      from him  
*alūwul*      *kāfan*      *ligāyet*      *essābī\**      *tāffet*      'alēh  
 the first      shroud      up to      the seventh,      spat      upon him  
*weqālet-loh*  
 and said to him :

*lōmā*      'īṣqak      *fī'nīsawān*  
 If not      your love (was)      for the women  
*mā*      *kūntīs*      *titkāffin*      *fī sabāḥt*      'ikfān.  
 not      you were      you are enshrouded      in      seven      shrouds.  
*qām*      *qāl-lāhā*      *hūwa*      *īnfī ?*<sup>42</sup>      *qām 'ādḍē*      *ṣubḍ'oh*  
 Now      he said to her      he (is it)      you?      He bit      his finger  
*qāṭa'oh.*      *weqā'adum*      *wāya*      *bāḍ.*  
 tore it off<sup>a</sup>.      And they remained      with      one another.

## V.

## STORY OF THE RHYMESTER AND HIS SON.

From Spitta-Bey's *Contes arabes modernes*.

*kān fīh*      *wāḥid*      *ge'edī*      *mitgāuwiz*      *wāḥde*  
 There was      a      rhymester      married to      a woman  
*fēḥīblet*      *mīnnoh*      *wegāt*      *tūlid.*      *qām*  
 and she conceived      by him      and went      she brings forth.      Now  
*mā*      *laqāṣ*      *fulūs*      'āndoh      'ala šān  
 not      he found      money      in his possession      in order to  
*yinaffīs-hā*<sup>1</sup>      *wēyāḥfī*      *liddāye*      *ūgret-hā.*  
 he takes care of her      and he gives      to the nurse      her fee.

<sup>a</sup> In anger.

*fēzi'il.* *weqám* *qál* *amm'arúh*  
And he worried (over it). And now he said I am going

*ašhát-lī* *ḥamsatén* *áhī* *liddáya*  
I beg for myself two five-para pieces I give to the nurse

*ḥámse* *wagíblík* *inti*<sup>2</sup> *ḥámsa* *tegíbíbhā*  
five and I give you you five ; you get brought for it

*fárḥa* *taklīhā.* *fēmišī* *fī'lhále* *iltáqa*  
a hen you eat it. Then he went into the country he found

*fárḥa* *ná'ime* *fóq* *ettáll.* *qám* *misíkhā* *iltáqa*  
a hen sleeping on the mound. Now he took her he found

*taḥtíhā* *béda.* *ḥaṭṭ* *elfárḥa* *fī* *'ibb.* *qál*  
under her an egg. He put the hen in (his) pocket. He said

*amm'arúh* *ádi* *'lfárḥa* *di* *lilmár'a* *tākúlhā*  
I am going I give this hen to the wife she will eat it

*wabí*<sup>3</sup> *elbéda* *bīḥámsa* *waḥtíhā*  
and I shall sell the egg for five (paras) and I shall give it

*liddáye.* *qám* *qábloh* *wáḥid* *yahúdi.* *qál-loh*  
to the nurse. Now met him a Jew. He said to him<sup>a</sup> :

*tištírī* *elbéda* *di?* *qállloh* *'ándak* *mínhā*  
Will you buy this egg? He said to him : Have you of them

*ketír?* *qállloh* *'štírī* *di* *wēlámma*  
(it) many? He said to him : Buy this one and when

*tebíḍ* *elfárḥa* *búkra* *agíblak* *béḍethā.*  
lays an egg the hen to-morrow I give you her egg.

*qállloh* *ṭáiyib* *bī'ásara* *maḥbúb*<sup>4</sup>. *qállloh*  
He said to him : Good ! for ten mahboub. He said to him :

*yíftaḥ-állah*<sup>5</sup> *liḡáyet* *ḥaṣṣálhā-loh* *'ašrín*  
May God open ; until he obtained from him twenty

<sup>a</sup> i.e. the rhymester said to the Jew.

*fekássiboh*<sup>a</sup>.      *ihtá-loh*      'lyahúdi      'l'ašrín      mahbúb  
and he gained it<sup>a</sup>.      Gave him      the Jew      the twenty      mahboub

*wēqál-loh*      *ta'dle*      *warrínī*      *bétak*      *ábqa*      *kállī*  
and said to him :      Come,      show me      your house      then      every

*yóm*      *ágī*      *áhod*      *elbéda*      *waḥṭīlak*      *el'ašrín*  
day      I come      I take      the egg      and I give you      the twenty

*mahbúb.*      *fēḥad*      *elge'édī*      *warrá-loh*      'l**bét**.  
mahboub.      Then took      the rhymester      showed him      the house.

*weráḥ*      *ištára*      *limrátoḥ*      *firáḥ*      *wēláḥmē*  
And he went      he bought      for his wife      hens      and meat

*wē'a'íāhā*      'l**fārḥa**.      *wēqál-lāhā*      *ūī*  
and gave her      the hen.      And he said to her :      Take care

*tidbāḥi*      'l**fārḥa di**      *tebíḍ*      *béda*      *kállī*      *yóm*  
you (don't) kill      this hen      it lays      an egg      every      day

*nebīḥā*<sup>a</sup>      *lilyahúdi*      *bī'ašrín*      *mahbúb.*      *fīḍīl*<sup>b</sup>  
we sell it<sup>b</sup>      to the Jew      for twenty      mahboub.      Continued

*elyahúdi*      *kállī*      *yóm*      *yáhod*      *mínhum*      *elbéda*  
the Jew      every      day      he takes      from them      the egg

*wēyahṭīhum*      *el'ašrín*      *mahbúb.*      *šībī*<sup>c</sup>  
and he gives them      the twenty      mahboub.      Became wealthy

*elge'édī*      *wēbáqa*      'ándoh      *mál*      *ketír*      *wēštára*  
the rhymester      and now      he has      means      much      and he bought

*gūwār*<sup>9</sup>      *wē'abíd*<sup>10</sup>      *wēfatáḥ-loh*      *dukkán*  
slave-girls      and slaves      and opened for himself      a shop

*wēbáqa*      *tágir*      *šahír.*      *lamma*      *kíbir*      'ibnoḥ  
and became      a merchant      well-known.      When      grew up      his son

*baná-loh*      *kuttáb*      'ala      *dímmetoh*      *wēgáma*      *fih*  
he built him      a school      at      his own expense      and collected      in it

<sup>a</sup> That is: He made the Jew bid up to twenty mahboub and then concluded the bargain (see note on *kássib*).

<sup>b</sup> 'it' = the egg.

*ennás elfúqara báqat tíqra*<sup>11</sup> *fíh. fégí*  
the people the poor and now they read in it. Then went

*elgé'édī fīlī' elhigáz*<sup>12</sup> *wēqál*  
the rhymester he went (on) the pilgrimage and he said

*limrátōh ū'i 'lyahūdī yídḥak 'alēkī wēyáḥod*  
to his wife: Take care (lest) the Jew laughs at you and takes

*mínnik elfárḥa. fīsáfir elgé'édī 'ala*  
from you the hen. Then set out the rhymester on

*'lhigáz. ba'dē gum'alén gí elyahūdī ḥábaḥ*  
the pilgrimage. After two weeks came the Jew knocked

*'ala 'lbáb betá'oh nádah limrát*  
at the door belonging to him called to the wife

*elgé'édī wēqál-lāhā ḥaḥṭī-lik*<sup>13</sup> *ṣandúq*  
of the rhymester and said to her: I will give you a chest

*mál wētaḥṭīnī elfárḥa? qálet-loh ána*  
of money and you give me the hen? She said to him (I)

*gózī mewasṣīnī ána māḥṭā-lákš gér*  
my husband ordered me (that) I not give you except

*elbéḍ betáḥhā. qál-lāhā mā-lkīš dā'wa*  
the eggs belonging to her. He said to her not to you anything

*in zī'il 'alēye ādīnī maugúd fī qalb*  
if he is vexed with me, here I am to be found in the heart

*elbéled. fīriḥet elmár'a bilmál wēāṭatōh*  
of the town<sup>a</sup>. Rejoiced the woman at the money and gave him

*'lfárḥa. qám misíkhā dabáḥhā 'lyahūdī. wēqál-lāhā*  
the hen. Now took it (and) killed it the Jew. And said to her:

*ḥódī naḍḍafihā wuṭbuḥíhā w'in núqṣet ḥíṭṭe*  
Take, clean it and cook it; and if is missing (any) piece,

<sup>a</sup> *Me voilà demeurant au milieu de la ville.*

*elli yākūlhā āftaḥ bāṭnoḥ weṭallāhhā*  
 of him who eats it I will open his belly and draw it out

*mīnnoh. qāmet ḥadēthā mīnnoh elfārḥa wēnadḍafēthā*  
 from him. Now she took (it) from him the hen and cleaned it

*weṭabaḥēthā wē'ibn elge'ēdi gī min*  
 and cooked it. And the son of the rhymester came from

*elkuttāb fi'dḍuhr iltāqa 'ummoh tiṭalla'*  
 the school at noon he found his mother she takes out

*elfarḥa wetehōṭṭēhā fi 'ṣṣaḥn. qāl-lāhā*  
 the hen and she puts it on the plate. He said to her :

*'dini ḥiṭṭe yā 'ūmmi ! qālet-loḥ 'ūskut*  
 Give me a morsel Oh my mother ! She said to him : Be quiet

*di muṣ betā'etnā. qām ḥāṭaf elqunāṣe*  
 this does not belong to us. Now he snatched up the gizzard

*betā' elfārḥa wēkālḥā. qāmet gārye min*  
 belonging to the hen and eat it. Now a slave-girl from

*elguwār<sup>14</sup> qālet-loḥ yā sīdī 'iḥrab min*  
 the female slaves said to him : Oh my master flee from

*elbéled-di āḥsan elyahūdī yīgī yīmsikak wēyīftaḥ*  
 this town otherwise the Jew comes he catches you and opens

*bāṭnak wēyāḥod mīnhā elqunāṣe. qām elwālād*  
 your belly and takes from it the gizzard. Now the boy

*rīkib elbāgle wēsāfir. qām elyahūdī gī*  
 mounted the mule and went away. Now the Jew came

*ṭalab elfārḥa iltaqāhā nāqiṣe elqunāṣe.*  
 demanded the hen he found it wanting the gizzard.

*qāl-lāhā elqunāṣe fēn ? qāletloḥ*  
 He said to her : The gizzard where ? She said to him :

*elqunāṣe ḥaṭāfhā ibnī kālḥā min*  
 the gizzard snatched it away my son he eat it from

*warāye. qāl-lāhā hālīh lāmmā nīftaḥ*  
 behind me<sup>a</sup>. He said to her: Bring him (here) so that we open  
*bāṭnoḥ wenāḥōdhā minnoḥ āna dāfi' fulūsī*  
 his belly and we take it<sup>b</sup> from him; I am paying my money  
*kullīhā 'alašān elqunāṣe di. qāmet qāletloḥ elwāled*  
 all of it for this gizzard. Now she said to him the boy  
*hārab. qām elyahūdī sāfir warāḥ kullīmā*  
 has fled. Now the Jew travelled after him; each time  
*yīnzil fī bēled yīs'al 'alēh weyīdī*  
 he alights in a place he asks about him, and he gives  
*wāṣfetoh linnās. yeqūlūloḥ kān*  
 his description to the people. They tell him he was  
*bāyit hēne wēsāfir. tann elyahūdī*  
 spending the night here and has gone on. Continued the Jew  
*lāmmā qābloḥ fī 'lhāle. qāl-loḥ tā'āle*  
 until he met him in the open. He said to him: Come  
*hēne yā 'ibn elge'ēdī mīn qāl-lak tākul*  
 here, Oh son of the rhymester, who told you (you) to eat  
*elqunāṣe? āna dāfi' fihā ṣandūq māl wē'āmīl*  
 the gizzard? I am paying for it a chest of money, and I make  
*ṣurūṭ wāy 'ummak ēlli yākul mīnhī ḥīṭṭe*  
 terms with your mother, he who eats of it any piece  
*'āftaḥ bāṭnoḥ wāḥōdhā minnoḥ. tā'dla hēne*  
 I open his belly and I take it from him. Come here,  
*lamm' āftaḥ bāṭnak wāḥod elqunāṣe.*  
 so that I open your belly and I take the gizzard.  
*qālloḥ ṭāiyīb! rūḥ fī-ḥālak bāqa īnte*  
 He said to him: Good! Go about your business now you

<sup>a</sup> i. e. behind my back, without my knowledge.<sup>b</sup> viz. *elqunāṣe*.

*gā'ī*      *mesāfir*      *warāye*      'ala šān      *qunāṣe*  
coming      travelling      after me      for the sake of      a gizzard

*betā'*      *fārha*      *miš* (= *muš*)      'ēb      'alēk ?  
belonging to      a hen ;      not      shame      upon you ?<sup>a</sup>

*rāḥ*      *tiqtīlnī*      'ala šān      *elqunāṣe* ?      *qām*  
Are      you going to kill me      for the sake of      the gizzard ?      Now

*elyahūdī*      *sāḥab*      *essikkīne*      *min*      *gēboh*      *wērāyiyih*  
the Jew      drew      the knife      from      his pocket      and going

*yiftāḥ*      *baṭn*      *elwāled.*      *qām*      *elwāled*      *mīskuh*  
he will open      the belly      of the boy.      Now      the boy      caught him

*bī'id*      *wāḥdē*      *wēḥābaṭoh*      *fi*      'l'arḍ.      *nīzil*  
with hand      one,      and threw him      to      the ground.      He fell down

*ḥāteṭ*      *māt.*      *fēfātoḥ*      'lwāled      *wēsāfir.*  
(in) pieces<sup>b</sup>      (and) died.      Then left him      the boy      and journeyed.

*fīḍil*      *mesāfir*      *lāmmā*      *ḥāssal*      *bēled*      *iltāqa*  
He kept on      travelling      till      he reached      a town (where) he found

*serāye*      *betāḥt*      *elmélik*      *me'allaq*      'ala      *bābhā*  
a palace      belonging to      the king ;      (and) hanging      on      its gate

*arba'īn*      *rās*      'illa      *wāḥid.*      *sā'al*      *ennās*  
(were) forty      heads      save      one.      He asked      the people :

*elli hum erru'ūs dōl*      *me'allaqīn*      'ala šān ē ?      *qālūloh*  
These heads      (are) hanging up      why ?      They said to him :

*elmélik*      'andoh      *bint*      'afiye      *elli*      *yehūššē*  
The king      has      a daughter      strong,      he who      enters

*yiglibhā*<sup>15</sup>      *yitgauwīzhā*      *wēlli*      *mā*  
(if) he conquers her      marries her,      and he who      does not

*yiglibhāš*      *yiqṭā'ū*      *rāsoh.*      *qām*      *elwāled*      *dāḥal*  
conquer her      they cut off      his head.      Now      the boy      went in

<sup>a</sup> Are you not ashamed ?

<sup>b</sup> He was crushed to atoms (*il fut écrasé en morceaux*).



'and *elmélik*. *qállōh* *ána biddī* *ánzil* *ána*  
to the king. He said to him I wish I go down <sup>a</sup> I

*wēbīntak* *nešūf* *'āfīlī* <sup>16</sup> *wálla*  
and your daughter we see (whether) my strength or

*'afīlhā* <sup>16</sup>. *qám* *elmélik* *qál-loh* *rúh*  
her strength (prevails). Now the king said to him: Go away,

*yā wáled* *īnte* *hūsāre* *fī'lmót* <sup>17</sup> *wē'ákam* <sup>18</sup>  
Oh boy; you (it is) a pity to the death, and how many

*rigāle* *zēyak* *gum* *wēbīntī* *tiglibhum*.  
men like you have come and my daughter conquers them.

*qám* *elwáled* *ána biddī* *tiglibnī* *wētiqā'ū*  
Now the boy (said) I wish she conquers me and ye cut off

*rāsī* *wēlē'allaqūhā* *'ala* *'lbāb*. *qál-loh*  
my head and ye hang it up on the gate. Said to him

*'lmélik* *īáiyib* *īktib* *wēhtim* *'ala kīdā*. *fēkátāb*  
the king: Good, write and seal on so <sup>b</sup>. Then wrote

*elwálad* *wēhátam*. *fēfarrašūm-loh* <sup>19</sup> *elhōš*  
the boy and sealed. Then they covered for him the court

*bilbusāṭ*. *wēnīzlū* *letnén* *sáwa* *hāṭṭū*  
with the carpet. And they descended both together, they put

*'bāṭhum* *fi* *'bāṭ* *bā'd*. *misīkhā* *elwálad*  
their shoulders in shoulder one another <sup>c</sup>. Took her the boy

*ramāhā* *fi'l'arḍ*. *qāmet* *'aléh* *rāmetoh*  
threw her to the ground. She got up upon him she threw him

*tānī*. *hīye* *fīdlet* *hīye* *tirmīh* *wēhūwa* *yirmīhā*.  
again. She continued she throws him and he throws her.

*qā'adū* *sahṭén* <sup>20</sup> *etnén* *wēhūma* *waq fīn*  
They stayed (two) hours two, and they standing

<sup>a</sup> i. e. into the arena.

<sup>b</sup> Words to that effect.

<sup>c</sup> i. e. They caught hold of each other round the middle of the body (to wrestle). *bāṭ* contracted from *ibāṭ* pl. *ibāṭāt* part under the shoulder, armpit.

*fī lḥināq*      *sāwa.*      *qām*      *elmélik*      *ingāz*      *elli*  
in the contest      together.      Now      the king      grew angry      that

*mā ḡalabetōš*      *hīye*      *ziyāde.*      *qām*      *elmélik*  
she did not conquer him      (she)      more.      Now      the king

*qāl-lūhum*      *béssē*      *dilwáqtē*      *bāqat*      *libākra*  
said to them:      Enough      at present;      now      (till) to-morrow

*'inzīlū*      *kemān*      *mārra*      *fī lḥināq.*      *qām*      *elmélik*  
come ye down      again      once      to the struggle.      Now      the king

*nādah*      *lilhūkama*      *qāl-lūhum*      *ellēlá-di*      *šammimū*  
called      to the doctors,      he said to them:      This night      let smell

*elwálad di*      *'lbing*      *wēšūfūh*      *mehāggib*<sup>21</sup>  
this boy      the narcotic      and look at him      (if he) bears a talisman

*wála*      *lābis*      *ē*      *'ala šān*      *bīntī*      *ána*<sup>22</sup>  
or (is) clothed (with)      something,      because      my daughter      (I)

*kull*      *elfirsān*      *betū*      *eddūnya*      *kállimā*      *yigī-lhā*  
all      the knights      of      the world      as often as      comes to her

*wáḥid*      *tīḡliboh*      *liḡāyet*      *arbā'in*      *illā*      *wáḥid*      *ezáy*  
one      she vanquishes him      till      forty      save      one      like

*wálad*      *zēyi*      *di*      *mā tīḡlibūš.*      *lāmmā*      *ḡí*  
a boy      like      this      she does not conquer him.      When      came

*ellél*      *wēnām*      *elwáled*      *rāḥ*<sup>23</sup>      *elhūkama*      *šammimūh*  
the night      and slept      the boy      went      the doctors      made him smell

*elbing*      *bannigūh*      *wēkāšafū*      *'ala*  
the narcotic      made him unconscious      and searched      upon

*ḡittetoh.*      *iltāqū*      *fī*      *šidroh*      *elqunāše*      *betāḥt*  
his body.      They found      in      his breast      the gizzard      belonging to

*elfārḥā*      *mekābbibe.*      *rāḥum*      *ḡābum*      *eīdde*  
the hen      rolled up.      They went      they fetched      the instruments,

*šarahūh*<sup>24</sup>      *wēṭállā'ū*      *elqunāše*      *min*      *šidroh*  
they cut into him      and drew out      the gizzard      from      his breast

*wəhaiyatúh zéyi má kán. qám elwālād fi*  
and sewed it up as it used to be. Rose up the boy in

*'ššúbhē min ennuḥm iltáqa šídroh ta'bán*  
the morning from (the) sleep<sup>a</sup> he found his breast tired

*wēltáqa náfsoh má 'andóhš 'afýe zé el'áuwul.*  
and he found himself he has not strength like the former.

*qám ílilí hárab háf lá 'lbiné*  
Now he went out he fled he feared lest the girl

*tígliboh timáuwitoh. fíḏil mášī fi'lhále*  
conquers him (and) kills him. He kept on walking in the open

*illáqa taláde biḥánqum má'a ba'd.*  
he found three (men) they fight with each other.

*qál-lūhum íntū bētiḥánqum lé? qālúloh*  
He said to them: Ye are fighting why? They said to him:

*ihne bēniḥániq 'ala šán tálat hāgát. qál-lūhum*  
We are fighting on account of three things. He said to them:

*hāgát é? qālú-loh wayánā busáṭ*  
Things what? They said to him: With us is a carpet

*yeṭír fi 'ssáma in ṭálab elwáhid yerúh 'aléh*  
it flies in the air, if desired somebody he goes upon it

*gēbel qáf yerúh. wēwayánā zuwēlī iza kán*  
(to) Mount Káf it goes<sup>b</sup>. And we have a bowl, if

*elwáhid yeqúl itmili fatte<sup>25</sup> yitmili.*  
somebody says fill thyself with stew (ragout) it fills itself.

*wēwayánā raḥáye élli yidauwárhā tinázzil fulús.*  
And we have a hand-mill he who turns it it lets fall money.

<sup>a</sup> = When he woke up.

<sup>b</sup> That is to say, if any one wishes the carpet to fly with him to Mount Káf it does so.

*qál-lūhum*      *ṭáiyib*      *warrúnī*      *'ttélat*      *ḥāgát*      *wan'*  
He said to them:    Good,    show me    the three    things    and I

*'afarráqhum*      *'alékum*      *bilḥáqq.*      *ṭalla'ūhum*  
will divide them    amongst you    with justice.    They drew them out

*warrāhūm-loh.*      *wēqál-lūhum*      *ifrīšū* <sup>26</sup>  
(and) showed them to him.    And he said to them:    Spread out

*elbusát*      *lammā*      *ašúfoh*      *ṭúloh*      *é.*      *wēḥátṭ*  
the carpet    so that    I see it    its length    what.    And he put

*ezzuwēlī*      *werraháye*      *fōq-oh.*      *wēmísik*      *elmaqrá'a*  
the bowl    and the hand-mill    upon it.    And he took    the wand

*betáḥtoh*      *fī*      *ídoh*      *wēqál-lūhum*      *ána*      *ḥáḥdif* <sup>27</sup>  
his own    in    his hand,    and said to them:    I    am going to throw

*ṭúbe*      *bī'izmī*      *wētígrū*      *waráh*      *intū*  
a stone    with (all) my strength    and ye shall run    after it    ye

*'tteláte*      *elli*      *yimsíkhā*      *fī*      *'l'aúwul*      *yáḥed* <sup>28</sup>  
the three;    whoever    gets hold of it    in    the first    shall take

*erraháye*      *betáḥt*      *elfulús.*      *qālálloh*  
the hand-mill    belonging to    the money.    They said to him:

*ṭáiyib.*      *fēmísik*      *eṭṭúbe*      *ramáhā*      *gíriyet*  
Good.    Then he took    the stone    he threw it    they ran <sup>a</sup>

*etteláte*      *waráhā.*      *húma*      *gíryum*      *wēḥúwa*      *ḥábat*      *elbusát*  
the three    after it.    They    ran,    and he    struck    the carpet

*bilmaqrá'ā*      *wēqál-loh*      *rúḥ*      *bíye*      *'ala*      *gébel*      *qáf.*  
with the wand    and said to it:    Go    with me    on    Mount    Káf.

*fēṭár*      *elbusát*      *bíh*      *ḥátṭuh*      *fōq*      *gébel*      *qáf.*  
Then flew    the carpet    with him    put him    upon    Mount    Káf.

*wēqá'ad*      *dáuwar*      *erraháye*      *nízletloh*      *fulús*  
And he sat    he turned    the mill    fell out to him    money

<sup>a</sup> The three men ran after it (the verb is fem. sing.).

*mínhā.*                      *wēqāl*                      *lizzuwēli*                      *ána*                      *gī'án*  
 from it.                      And he said                      to the bowl                      I (am)                      hungry,  
                                  *itmīlī*                      *fattē*                      *billáħmē*                      *ħallīnī*                      *ákul.*  
 fill thyself with                      stew                      with meat,                      let me                      (I) eat.  
                                  *itmalá-loħ*                      'zzuwēli                      *elfattē*                      *wēkal.*                      *bá'dē*  
 It filled itself for him                      the bowl                      the stew                      and he ate.                      After  
                                  *má*                      *kal*                      *waḍáħhum*                      *wetánnoh*                      *ṭá'ir*                      *ħátta*  
 that                      he had eaten                      he put them <sup>a</sup>,                      and continued                      flying                      till  
                                  *gámbē*                      *seráyet*                      *bint elmélik.*                      *wēddáħal*  
 beside                      the palace                      (of) the king's daughter.                      And he went in  
                                  *qál-lāhā*                      'inzīlī                      *niṭḡálīb*                      *sáwa.*  
 he said to her:                      Come down                      we contend                      together.  
                                  *fēnīzlet*                      *elbīntē*                      *loh*                      *wīqīf*                      *húwa*                      *wehīye*  
 Then came down                      the girl                      to him                      standing                      he                      and she  
                                  *fōq*                      *elbusáṭ*                      *wēħábaṭ*                      *elbusáṭ*                      *bilmaqrá'a*  
 upon                      the carpet                      and he struck                      the carpet                      with the wand  
                                  *wēqál-loħ*                      *ṭír*                      *bīnā*                      *līgēbel*                      *qáf.*                      *qál-lāhā*  
 and said to it: Fly                      with us                      to Mount                      Káf.                      He said to her:  
                                  *elmal'úb*                      *éllī*                      'amaltúħ                      *fīye*                      *wála*                      'lmal'úb-di?  
 The trick                      which                      you have done                      to me                      or                      this trick <sup>b</sup>?  
                                  *qálet-loħ*                      *fī*                      'árḍak                      *má'aléhšī?*  
 She said to him: I throw myself                      on your mercy,                      pardon me,  
                                  *raggá'nī*                      *tánī*                      *fī*                      *seráyet*                      'abúyā                      *wána*  
 bring me back                      again                      into                      (the) palace                      of my father;                      and I  
                                  *aḡáuwizak*                      *waqúl*                      *da*                      *ḡalábnī*  
 will marry you,                      and I will say:                      This man                      has conquered me  
                                  *waraggá'lak*                      *elqundše*                      *zéyi má kánet*  
 and I will give back to you                      the gizzard                      as it used to be

<sup>a</sup> In full: he put the mill and the bowl back on the carpet.

<sup>b</sup> Supply: Which is the better trick?

*fī*      *šīdrak*      *āḥsan*      *ma-nmūt*      *bilgū*      *héne*      *fī*  
 in   your breast   otherwise   we shall die   of hunger   here   in

*wasṭ*      *elgābāl.*      *qāl-lāhā*      *īnlī*      *gī'āne*  
 the middle   of the mountain.   He said to her :   You   hungry

*dilwāqt ?*      *agīb-lik*      *ṭabīḥ*      *sāḥnē*      *tāklī ?*  
 now ?   Shall I bring you   cooked stuff   hot   (that) you eat ?

*qālet-loh*      *ṭāiyīb*      *hātuh*      *warrīnī.*      *gāb*  
 She said to him :   Good,   give it   show me.   He brought

*elqādaḥ*      *wegāl-loh*      *itmīlī*      *fātlē*      *bīlāḥmē.*  
 the goblet   and said to it :   Fill thyself with   stew   with meat.

*kālum*      *letnén*      *sāwa*      *wēwarrā'lhā*      *'rrahāye*  
 They ate   both   together,   and he showed her   the handmill

*ēlli*      *bitnāzzil*      *dāhab.*      *bā'doh*      *qā'adum*      *šūwāiye*      *sāwa.*  
 which   lets fall   gold.   Afterwards   they sat   a little   together.

*qālet-loh*      *qūm*      *lamma*      *nīfāssaḥ*      *šūwāiye*      *fī*  
 She said to him :   Stand up   so that   we go a walk   a little   in

*wasṭ*      *elgābāl.*      *ḥālletoh*      *qām*  
 the middle   of the mountain.   She made him   he got up

*wēḥāṭṭē*      *riglēh*      *'ala*      *'l'arḍ<sup>29</sup>.*      *wēmīsket*      *elmaqrā'a*  
 and put   both his feet   on   the ground.   And she took   the stick

*fīdhā<sup>30</sup>*      *wēḥābatet*      *elbusāṭ*      *wegālet-loh*      *ṭīr*  
 in her hand   and struck   the carpet   and said to it :   Fly,

*waddīnī*      *fī*      *qaṣr*      *abīyā.*      *ṭār*      *bīhā*  
 bring me   into   the castle   of my father.   It flew   with her

*'lbusāṭ*      *waddāhā*      *fī'lqaṣr.*      *wīqīf*      *'ibn*  
 the carpet   brought her   into the castle.   Stood   the son

*elgē'ēdī*      *fī*      *wasṭ*      *elgebel*      *līwāḥdoh.*  
 of the rhymester   in the   middle   of the mountain   alone.

*mīšī*      *fī*      *sīkke*      *bāqa*      *yī'āiyaṭ*      *'ala*      *nāfsoh*  
 He walked   on   (the) way   now   he cries   over   himself

*fīdīl*      *mesāfir*      *sāfar yóm.*      *qám*      *illāqa*  
he continued      going      a day's journey <sup>a</sup>.      Now      he found

*naḥletén*      *fī*      *wasṭ*      *elǧébel*      *ṭarḥín*  
two date-palms      in      the middle      of the mountain      bearing

*bálah*      *wáḥde*      *baláḥhā*      *'aḥmar*      *wēwáḥde*      *baláḥhā*      *'ašfar.*  
dates,      one      its dates      red      and one      its dates      yellow.

*qám*      *qáṭa'*      *baláḥe*      *šáfra*      *wēkálhā.*      *qám*      *ṭīlī'*  
Now      he cut      a date      yellow      and ate it.      Now      sprang up

*fī*      *rāsoḥ*      *qarn*      *iššábak*      *fī*      *'nnaḥletén.*  
in      his head      a horn,      it entangled itself      in      the two date-palms.

*máddē*      *'īdoh*      *ǧáb*      *bálahā*      *ḥámra*      *kálhā*      *ráḥ*  
He stretched out      his hand      took      a date      red      ate it,      went

*elqárnē*      *mirrāsoḥ* <sup>31</sup>.      *qám*      *mála*      *'ibboh*      *min*  
the horn      from his head.      Now      he filled      his pocket      with

*elbálah*      *el'aḥmar*      *wē'ašfar*      *wēfīdīl*      *mesāfir*  
the dates      the red      and the yellow      and he continued      travelling

*lél*      *mā'a*      *naḥár*      *šahrén*      *tamám*      *lammā*      *ḥással*  
night      with      day      two months      exactly      until      he reached

*elbéled*      *betá'et*      *bint elmélik*      *wegí*  
the town      belonging to      the king's daughter      and came

*taḥt*      *esseráye*      *wēnāda*      *wēqál*      *'ādí*      *'lbálah*  
beneath      the palace      and called      and said:      Here are      the dates

*éllī*      *min ǧér*      *'awán.*      *qámet*      *bint elmélik*  
which are      without      season <sup>b</sup>.      Now      the king's daughter

*qálet*      *liḥaddāmín*      *ištirú-lī*      *bálah*      *min*      *errágil dī.*  
said      to the servants:      Buy me      dates      from      this man.

*ištarū*      *mínnoḥ*      *ṭortén*      *bálah*      *wē'aṭúhum*  
They bought      from him      sixteen <sup>c</sup>      dates      and gave them

<sup>a</sup> i. e. He went on walking for a whole day.

<sup>b</sup> i. e. Which are in season all the year round.

<sup>c</sup> *ṭore* = an eight (like "a dozen"). (Cf. *une huitaine.*)



<i>libint</i>	<i>elmelik.</i>	<i>laqatoḥ</i>	<i>bālah</i>					
to the daughter	of the king.	She found them (to be)	dates					
<i>'āsfaṛ</i>	<i>kalēthum</i>	<i>eṭṭortén.</i>	<i>ṭili<sup>c</sup></i>					
yellow	she ate them	the two batches of eight.	Came out					
<i>lāhā</i>	<i>tāman</i>	<i>qurūn</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>rāshā</i>	<i>kullī</i>	<i>arbā'a</i>	<i>miskū</i>	<i>fī</i>
to her	eight	horns	in	her head	each	four	caught	in
<i>ḥēṭa.</i>	<i>fiṭgama'et</i>	<i>'alēhā</i>	<i>ahl</i>	<i>esserāye</i>				
a wall.	Then assembled	about her	the people	of the palace				
<i>wabūhā</i>	<i>qāl</i>	<i>elḥābar</i>	<i>é?</i>	<i>qālū</i>	<i>iḥna</i>			
and her father	said:	The news	what <sup>a</sup> ?	They said	we			
<i>ṭallēna</i>	<i>iltaqēnā</i>	<i>tāman</i>	<i>qurūn</i>	<i>'ala</i>	<i>rāshā</i>	<i>'ala-ḡāfle</i>		
looked up	we found	eight	horns	on	her head	suddenly,		
<i>wēmiskū</i>	<i>fī</i>	<i>'lhētān.</i>	<i>ḡama'</i>					
and they fastened themselves	in	the walls.	Assembled					
<i>'abūhā</i>	<i>elḥūkama</i>	<i>mā</i>	<i>'irfūš</i>	<i>yidāwūhā</i>				
her father	the doctors	not	they knew	they cure her				
<i>weyigībū</i>	<i>elmenāšīr</i>	<i>yinšūrū</i>	<i>fī lqurūn</i>	<i>mā</i>				
and they bring	the saws	they saw	into the horns,	not				
<i>yitnašrūš.</i>	<i>qām</i>	<i>'abūhā</i>	<i>ṭalla'</i>	<i>menādī</i>	<i>fī</i>			
they become sawn <sup>b</sup> .	Now	her father	sent out	a crier	into			
<i>'lbeled</i>	<i>elli</i>	<i>yīdī</i>	<i>dāwa</i>	<i>libint</i>				
the town:	whoever	gives	medicine	to the daughter				
<i>essullān</i>	<i>welḥiff</i>	<i>yitḡawwīzhā</i>	<i>weyī'mil</i>					
of the sultan	and she recovers	he marries her,	and he makes (him)					
<i>wazīroh.</i>	<i>qām</i>	<i>rāḥ</i>	<i>'ibn</i>	<i>elḡē'ēdī</i>	<i>'āuwul</i>			
his vizier.	Now	went	the son	of the rhymester	the first			
<i>yōm</i>	<i>ṭalla'</i>	<i>bālahā</i>	<i>ḥāmra</i>	<i>wēkassārḥā</i>	<i>ḥiṭaṭ</i>			
day	he drew out	a date	red	and broke it	in pieces			

<sup>a</sup> = What is the matter?<sup>b</sup> i. e. The horns cannot be cut with saws.

*wēḥaṭṭīhā fī ḥanākhā. kalēthā rāḥ qárnē*  
and put it in her mouth. She ate it went away a horn

*min rāshā. zágraṭū 'lḥarīm wēfírḥum wēqálū*  
from her head. Cried out the women and rejoiced and said :

*elḥakīm di šāṭir. wēḥāšūh fī'sserāye*  
This doctor (is) clever. And they kept him in the palace

*támant 'iyám. qā'ad támant 'iyám wēkúllī yóm*  
eight days. He remained eight days, and every day

*yitállā' qarn lámma ṭállā' mínhā*  
he made go away a horn until were away from her

*'ttáman qurún. wēqám elmālik ḥašúh kátab*  
the eight horns. And now the king kept him back, he wrote

*elkitāb 'alēhā wētgauwízhī wē'ámaloh*  
the book upon her <sup>a</sup>, and he married her, and made him

*wazíroh. lámmā dáḥal 'alēhā qál-lāhā fén*  
his vizier. When he went in to her he said to her : Where is

*elbusáṭ betá'ī welmaqrá'a wazzuwēlī*  
the carpet belonging to me and the wand and the bowl

*warraháye ? qálet-loh húwa ínte ? qál-lāhā*  
and the handmill ? She said to him : He you <sup>b</sup> ? He said to her :

*mal'úbī wála mal'úbik ? qálet-loh lá ínte*  
My trick or your trick <sup>c</sup> ? She said to him : No, (you)

*mal'úbak ṭíli' 'aqwa min mal'úbī.*  
your trick came out stronger than my trick.

*wēqá'adum wáya báḏē fī'lkamál.*  
And they remained with each other in perfect harmony.

<sup>a</sup> i. e. He made the marriage contract.

<sup>b</sup> Is it you ?

<sup>c</sup> Supply : Which has proved the stronger ?

## II. Amsâl.

## PROVERBS.

1. *mîn gâwir elhaddâd yithîriq bînâroh.* Who takes as neighbour the smith will be burnt by his fire.
2. *'îsma' min héne wesâdiyib min héne.* Hear from here, and let out from here. (In at one ear, out at the other.)
3. *iftakárnâ 'lquṭṭ gánâ yenúṭṭ.* We thought of the cat, he came to us jumping. (Speak of the devil, &c.)
4. *ḡâb elquṭṭ il'ab yâ fâr.* Away is the cat, play, O mouse!
5. *mâssik elquṭṭa muṭṭâḥ elkerâr.* He let the cat take the key of the larder.
6. *elhêṭa elwaṭîya kullî nâs ye-núṭṭu 'aléhâ.* A low wall every one jumps over it.
7. *sukutnâ-loh dáḡal biḥmâroh.* We kept silence for him, he came in with his donkey. (Give him an inch, &c.)
8. *elkútra tiḡlib eššagâ'a.* Numbers conquer bravery.
9. *zé elbarâbra tîs'a yitkêllimû wê wâḡhid yîsma'.* Like the Berberines, nine jabber and one listens.
10. *elmârkib illi fîhâ râyisén tiḡraq.* The boat which has two captains in it will sink. (Too many cooks, &c.)
11. *bâṣal biḡâmsa wâlla biḡâmsa bâṣal.* An onion for five (paras) or for five (paras) an onion. (Six of one, &c.)
12. *elâḡlâ min eššêṭân.* Haste is of the devil.

## III. Mawāwil.

## SONGS.

(From Spitta-Bey's *Grammatik des arabischen Vulgärdialektes in Ägypten*.)

*min 'amsi yā nās, aḥadtūnā 'aḥibbākum  
bīkum riḍīnā wəfī'laurāq katabnākum  
lāmmā zu'īmtum wəbbānet lī asāyākum  
qālbī 'irif qām ḥālif aimān teḥarrāmikum  
yā mā'ilīn min defūlīrnā šaṭabnākum.*

Since yesterday, O people, you have taken us as your friends, with you we were content, and on the leaves (of friendship) we inscribed your names. But when you became proud, and your evil doings became known to me, my heart knew you and swore an oath, which excommunicates you. Ye fickle ones, we have erased your names from our books.

*yā mubtālī, kūnīē mālik el'aṣr fī tāhtak  
lāmmā 'btalēt lāḥbaṭ erramāl fī tāhtak  
wāhlak gafūk ḥāttā 'ummak wabūk wūḥtak  
wemārkiḇak rāḥet tegīḇlak dāwa bilād errūm  
istaisarūhā 'nnaṣāra min 'ādam bāhtak.*

O unlucky one, thou wast the king of time on thy throne. When thou didst become unlucky the grains of thy sand were troubled on thy board. And thy family plagued thee, even thy mother, thy father and thy sister. And thy ship, which went forth to bring thee physic from the land of the Greeks, that have the Christians taken captive, since thy luck has failed.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES TO THE READING MATTER.

### I.

1. *kán* or *kán fih*, there was once. 2. *firiḥ bî*, to rejoice over. 3. *kuntê biddî, kuntê biddak*, &c. = I wished, thou wishedst, &c. 4. *elḥawāga elfulānî*, Mr. N., Mr. So-and-so. 5. *wāṣṣā bî*, to commission with, give an order for. 6. *bāga, yībga*, with expressions of time = it is, ago, e. g. *yībga telāt 'iyām*, it is three days, three days ago (*il y a trois jours*). 7. = *waṣṣā-k*, has commissioned thee; *boh* = *bî-oh*, with it. 8. *ḥabb, yeḥibb*, love, like, like to do.

### II.

1. *eddúnyä bardê qáwî*, it is very cold. 2. *ámkan, yímkin*, be possible. 3. After *in* the past tense is employed. 4. Should really be *án'im*, but the *i* is changed on account of the '. 5. = *wē fî wáqtuh*, and in his time = immediately. 6. *ṣábbah 'ala*, wish somebody good morning; *sellim 'ala*, greet somebody. 7. *gáwiḥ* with accusative to answer some one. 8. = *mā-iddafét-šî*. 9. The *i* of *iddafét* is not pronounced because of the preceding *a*. 10. = *mā-istáwā-šê*. 11. = *fē'inbasat*. 12. *mát 'ala rūḥoh min ḍiḥk*, he nearly laughed himself to death. 13. *kirr*, is the sound of laughter.

### III.

No. 1. 1. *elli lak 'ándî*, which I owe you. 2. *kántê nisîtoh*, I had forgotten it.

No. 2. 1. After the numerals from 11 upwards the substantive is in the singular; and 2. from 2 to 10 in the plural.

No. 3. 1. *fîḍil yedúqq*, he remained, he knocks = he kept on knocking; cf. *fîḍil yigrî*, he ran the whole time; *ba'dén fîḍil yís'al 'ala bêt elḥawāga*, thereupon he asked further after the gentleman's house; *wēfîḍil yîndah 'alkiláb*, and he continued to call the dogs. 2. *inn*, that, is joined to the suffixes.

No. 4. 1. *beiraqdâr*, a Turkish word. 2. It is necessary to distinguish between *dafanúh*, they buried him, and *dáfanû*, they buried (the *h* is mute in the first case).

No. 5. Instead of *sällämtôh-loh*. 2. = *mā-adêt-oh-loh-še*, so also 3. = *warrét-oh-loh*. 4. Did you let him read it?

## IV.

## STORY OF THE PRINCE IN LOVE.

1. *ḥibil*, *a*, conceive. 2. *lá . . . wālā*, neither . . . nor. 3. *wīlid*, give birth to, bring forth. 4. literally, she stood up; used in the sense of 'now,' as we have translated it. 5. Assimilation of the *n* of *min* instead of *min rabbihā*. 6. Instead of *a'ṭīnī*. 7. And even if. 8. For *min rīhet* (see 5). 9. *ṭall*, look down upon from above. Here fem. of the participle *ṭālil* (elision of the *i* and shortening of the *ā* into *a*). 10. *itqālīb* from *qālīb* (*qálab*), turn round. 11. i. e. The physic of which he was in need. 12. Participle of *ṣīq*, love. 13. *mūrāfiq* (*me . . .*), he who has a loved one. 14. Participle of *wīqif*. 15. *ḡarad*, wish, goal, object, what is necessary. 16. It has been already stated that if the (classical) *t* appears in substantives ending in *a*, *ā*, the *a*, *ā* is often rejected, which, however, has no effect on the accent: thus *me'allimt* and not *me'allimt*. 17. = *mā 'amūtš*. 18. *betāht* instead of *betā'et*. 19. *nāffad fi'lkittān*, to clean the linen. 20. Instead of *ṣobāhā*; change of the ' into *ḥ*. 21. Instead of 'ala *šān*. 22. *rāḥ*, as sign of immediate future. 23. *itwāhašš li*, to have a longing for something, pity some one. 24. = *fē ibn*. 25. from *aurā*, *yūrī*, show. 26. *wīqif 'ala ḥēloh*, raise oneself up in bed. 27. *yā rēt* = Oh that! 28. 'amma, 'amm', sign of present. 29. = *bē-yirūḥ*. 30. *dann*, *tann*, see Lesson XXIX. 31. *zī'il*, get cross, become angry. Infin. *zā'al*, *zā'lān*, cross, angry. 32. *wēti'a'ṭīnī*, and you give me. 33. *fī 'ardik*, *fī 'ardak*, I entreat your protection. 34. *fīrrat*, to take a necklace to pieces, to separate the parts of it thoroughly. 35. *kāffin*, enshroud, bury; *itkāffan*, to be wrapped up in tomb-cloths. 36. *dāfan*, bury. 37. *kafan*, pl. *kafanāt* or 'ikfān, shroud. 38. The verb is 3rd pers. sing. fem. before its subject, a broken plural (see Lesson XXIII). On the other hand (39) *dāḥalū*, they entered in, after the subject. 40. 'ammam 'amāne, impose an obligation. 41. See note 38. 42. We have already mentioned in the grammar that when an affirmative answer is expected *še* is used in the question: e. g. *'andākše fulūs?* have you any money on you? *ḥūwa*, *hīye*, are sometimes used if a negative answer is expected: thus *ḥūwa tī'mil kīdū?* you surely will not do so?

## V.

## STORY OF THE RHYMESTER AND HIS SON.

1. *nāffas*, to nurse a *nāfsā* (i.e. a woman in child-bed).  
 2. *intī*, for emphasis. 3. = *we'abī*. 4. *mahbūb*, in Arabic stories is usually a gold-piece. The different mahboubbs now in existence have values from 6½ to 9 francs. 5. i. e. May God open the gates of gain. The dealer says this to the purchaser when he considers the price offered too small. 6. *kássib*, when the seller accepts an offer the formula runs *allāh yikássibak*, may the Lord let you prosper in business. 7. = *nebi'-hā*. 8. *fiḍil yāḥod*, he kept on taking (see note 1, No. 3, III). 9. *gárye*, pl. *guwār*, slave-girl. 10. *'abd*, pl. *'abīd*, slave; *bē' el'abīd*, slave-trade; *baiyā' el'abīd*, slave-trader; *sūq el'abīd*, slave-market; *'obūdiye*, slavery. 11. *tīgra*, agrees with *nās* (Lesson XXIII). The sense of the sentence is: and now they learn to read in the school. 12. Went on pilgrimage to Mecca. 13. Contracted from *ha aḥṭī* (*a'ṭī*). 14. One of the slave-girls; so also *bint min banāt elmelik*, one of the daughters of the king. 15. *gālab*, conquer. 16. Instead of *'āfēyetī* and *'āfīyethā* (*'āfīye*, health, strength). 17. *rūḥ* till *mōt* = Go away, boy, it would be a shame to kill you. 18. *ākam* for *kām*. 19. *fārraš elbusāt*, spread out the carpet. 20. Instead of *sā'atén*. 21. *mēḥāggīb* (*mūḥ* . . .), one who carries a talisman. 22. *bintī āna*, MY daughter; *āna*, emphatical. 23. See rules of agreement, Lesson XXIII. 24. *šārah*, make an incision. 25. *fatt*, which we have translated stew (ragout) is a celebrated Arab dish. (The receipt for it is given in Spitta-Bey's *Contes arabes modernes*, p. 118.) 26. Here *fāraš* with one *r*, to spread out. 27. *ḥāḥdīf*, composed of *ha* and *aḥdīf* from *ḥādāf*, sling, throw. 28. *yāḥed*, instead of *yāḥod*. 29. She made him get up and put his feet to the ground off the carpet. 30. Instead of *fī idhā*. 31. = *min rāsok*.



# VOCABULARIES

## I. ARABIC-ENGLISH.

## II. ENGLISH-ARABIC.

IN the following small vocabularies we have endeavoured as far as possible to give every word occurring in the exercises. The plural of every irregular substantive and adjective has been given in full, while the terminations *-în* or *-ât* have been given of those which are regular.

The student will do well to make a list of substantives, whose plurals have the same form. In this manner he will obtain an insight into Arabic forms and the laws of formation of plurals. (Comparison should be made for instance between the following substantives : *şidr*, pl. *şudûr* ; *'irq*, pl. *'urûq* ; *qird*, pl. *qurûd* ; *far'*, pl. *furû'* ; *barq*, pl. *burûq* ; *harf*, pl. *hurûf*.)

In the case of verbs the Present form is always sufficiently indicated ; for the regular verbs, for those which have 2nd and 3rd radicals the same, and for the  $w^2$  and  $y^2$  verbs, the Present vowel alone is given after the verb ; e. g. *qidir*, *a* (*yiqdar*), be able ; *gáz*, *û* (*yegûz*), be allowed ; *laff*, *i* (*yeliff*), wrap up. When the Present vowel is the same as that of the Perfect the Present prefix alone is given ; if a change of vowels takes place the Present form is given in full. Finally, the student should be careful to differentiate between masculine substantives ending in *â* (e. g. *hádâ*, *nádâ*, *hâwâ*) and feminine substantives ending in *a*, *ä* and *e* (*î* in classical Arabic).

# I. ARABIC-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## NOTE.

The order of the letters is as follows: *Alif* (*Ā, E, I, O, U* included), *B, D* and *Ḍ, F, G, Ġ* (ع), *H, Ḥ, Ḫ, ʿ* (ح), *K, L, M, N, Q, R, S* and *Ṣ, Ṣ̣, T* and *Ṭ, W, Y, Z*.

### **Alif** (*A, E, I, O, U*).

'*ab*(ū), pl. 'ubahāt ('abahāt), father.

ābū 'lḥól, Sphinx.

āb, August (month).

ābādān, never, not at all.

ābnā, pl. of ibn, son.

ābsaṭ, yib., rejoice.

abwāb, pl. of bāb, door, gate, chapter.

abyār, pl. of bīr, well.

ādā, yidī, give.

ādab, pl. ādāb, manners, education.

adān, call to prayer.

adār, March (month).

āddib, yi'āddib, educate.

ādrū, pl. of dirā, arm.

āgā, pl. āgawāt, esquire, eunuch.

agāb, yegīb, answer.

ā'gab, yī'gīb, please.

agāze, permission, leave.

āggar, yi'āggar, hire.

agñīye, pl. of gānī, rich.

agwāz, pl. of gōz, spouse, husband, pair.

agwībe, pl. of gawāb, answer, letter.

āhī, āhō, &c., See! There she is! he is! &c. (*le voilà*).

ahl, pl. ahālī, family, household.

ahl elbēl, family.

ahwīye, pl. of hāwā, air, climate, weather.

ahbāb, pl. of ḥabīb, friend, lover.

āḥmar, fem. ḥāmra, pl. ḥumr, red.

āḥsan, better.

ah(ū), pl. iḥwān, brother.

āḥad, yāḥod, take.

āḥar, fem. ūḥra, pl. ūḥar, other.

āḥdar, fem. ḥādra, pl. ḥudr, green.

āḥḥar, yi'āḥḥar, delay.

āḥir, last.

ahwāl, pl. of ḥāl, uncle (mother's side).

ai-nā'am, of course, certainly.

aiyām, pl. of yōm, day.

ākal (kal), yākul, eat.

ākbar, greater (comp. of kebīr).

akl, food, eating.

āktar, more (comp. of ketīr).

*ákwas*, finer, more beautiful  
 (comp. of *kūwáiyis*).  
*ále*, pl. *ālát*, instrument, tool.  
*alf*, pl. *āláf* and *uláf*, thousand.  
*alláh*, God.  
*alsíne*, pl. of *lisán*, tongue,  
 language.  
*á'me*, blind.  
*ámar*, *yú'mur*, command.  
*ámír*, pl. *ámara*, prince.  
*ámkan*, *yímkin*, be possible.  
*amma*, but, on the other hand.  
*amr*, pl. *umúr*, business; com-  
 mand (v. *awámir*).  
*ána*, I.  
*anwár*, pl. of *núr*, light.  
*arbá'a*, four.  
*arḍ*, pl. *arḍāḍi*, earth, land.  
*argífe*, pl. of *ragíf*, loaf of  
 bread.  
*argul*, pl. of *rigl*, foot.  
*ásad*, pl. *usúd*, lion.  
*ásámi*, pl. of *ism*, name.  
*ásfar*, yellow.  
*ášgar*, smaller (comp. of *šūgái-  
 yar*).  
*ašḥáb*, pl. of *šāḥib*, master, pro-  
 prietor, friend.  
*ášloh*, to begin with, at first.  
*ásmar*, brown.  
*ášgál*, pl. of *šugl*, work, business.  
*ašyát*, pl. of *šé*, thing.  
*á'tā*, *yí'ti*, give.  
*auqát*, pl. of *waqt*, time.  
*aulád*, pl. of *wálad*, child, boy.  
*aurā*, *yúrī*, show.

*auráq*, pl. of *wáraq*, leaf, sheet  
 of paper.  
*áuwal*, first (*áuwul*).  
*awámir*, pl. of *amr*, command.  
*á'war*, one-eyed.  
*ayādī*, pl. of *'id*, hand.  
*ázhar*, *yízhir*, express, explain,  
 show.  
*ázraq*, blue.  
*é*, *éš*, what?  
*élli* (*illī*), which, who.  
*ēlúl*, September.  
*embáreh*, yesterday.  
*énhū*, *énhī* (*enhú*, *enhí*), which?  
*ennahárdä*, to-day.  
*etnén*, two.  
*ibgál*, pl. of *bágle*, mule.  
*ibn*, pl. *ábna* (*bánī*), son.  
*ibtádä*, *yibtídī*, begin.  
*íd*, pl. *ayādī*, hand.  
*ifrāng*, European.  
*iflákár*, *yiftíkír*, think.  
*iḥmárr*, *yih.*, be red, blush.  
*ihna*, we.  
*iḥtámál*, *yihítímil*, support, en-  
 dure.  
*iḥbár*, information.  
*iḥḍárr*, *yih.*, turn green, be green.  
*iḥtár*, *yih.*, choose.  
*iḥtiyár*, pl. -*íye*, old (aged).  
*iḥwán* (*iḥwe*), pl. of *aḥ*, brother.  
*iḥwát*, pl. of *uḥt*, sister.  
*illa*, except, save.  
*imkán*, possibility.  
*imte*, when.  
*in*, if, that, to.

*ingelíz*, the English.  
*ingelízī*, English, an Englishman.  
*inkásar*, *yinkísir*, break in pieces  
 (intr.).  
*inn*, so that.  
*insán*, pl. *nás*, mankind, people.  
*inte*, fem. *ínī*, thou, you (sing.).  
*intū*, you (pl.).  
*işfárr*, *yisf.*, become yellow.  
*iskenderíye*, Alexandria.  
*islám*, Mohammedanism.  
*ism*, pl. *üsámī*, name.  
*istábdā*, *yistábdī*, begin.  
*istahámma*, *yist.*, bathe (intr.).  
*istáhsin*, find nice, approve of.  
*istálam*, *yistílim*, receive.  
*istánna*, *yist.*, wait.  
*istáwā*, *yistáwī*, be ripe, ready.  
*istá'zin*, *yist.*, ask permission.  
*iswádd*, *yis.*, become black.  
*ilgáuwiż*, *yilg.*, marry.  
*itkállim*, *yilk.*, speak.  
*itqábil*, *yitq.*, meet.  
*iudán*, pl. of *widn*, ear.  
*īyám*, pl. of *yóm*, day.  
*íza*, *íza-kán*, if.  
*izn*, pl. *uzún*, permission.  
*óða*, pl. *úwad*, room.  
*ubahát*, pl. of *ab*, father.  
*úgra*, pl. *úgar*, wage.  
*úhar*, pl. of *áhar*, other.  
*úhra*, others.  
*uht*, pl. *aḥawát*, sister.  
*úlād*, pl. of *wálad*, child, boy.  
*umm*, pl. *ummahát*, mother.  
*umúr*, pl. of *amr*, affair, business.

*urúba*, Europe.  
*úšhur*, pl. of *šahr*, month.

## B.

*bá'*, *yebí'*, sell.  
*bá'at*, a, send.  
*báb*, pl. *bībán* (*abwāb*), door,  
 gate, chapter.  
*ba'd*, after.  
*bá'dē-mā*, afterwards.  
*bāddān*, pl. *abdān*, trunk of the  
 human body.  
*bá'dēn*, then, afterwards.  
*bágle*, pl. *biḡál*, mule.  
*baḥr*, pl. *biḥár*, sea.  
*baḥr enníl*, the Nile.  
*báiyin*, *yib.*, explain.  
*bála*, without.  
*bāllād*, pl. *bilād*, place, town.  
*bálah*, fresh dates.  
*balāš*, never mind! in vain, gratis.  
*bánā*, *yibnī*, build.  
*banāt*, pl. of *bint*, girl.  
*bánī*, pl. of *ibn*, son.  
*báqā*, *yibqā*, stay, remain.  
*baqá*, *báqat*, however.  
*báqar*, cattle.  
*báqara*, cow.  
*baqšiš*, present, 'tip.'  
*barábra*, pl. of *bārbāri*, Berbe-  
 rine, Nubian.  
*barānīṭ*, pl. of *bornēṭa*, hat.  
*bārbāri*, see *barábra*.  
*bard*, cold, coldness.  
*bárdī*, *bárdak*, &c., I also, thou  
 also, &c.  
*bárid*, pl. *-ín*, cold (adj.).

*barr*, mainland, continent.  
*bárrā*, out, outside.  
*barrānī*, outward.  
*bass*, only, enough.  
*başş*, look.  
*bāša*, pl. *bašawāt*, Pasha.  
*bāt*, *ā*, spend the night.  
*baṭāṭis*, potatoes.  
*baṭn*, pl. *buṭūn*, belly.  
*baṭṭa*, duck; collectively, *baṭṭ*,  
     ducks.  
*baṭṭāl*, pl. *baṭṭālīn*, bad.  
*bauwābe*, pl. *bauwābāt*, gate.  
*bē*, sale.  
*bēḍa*, an egg; collectively, *bēḍ*,  
     eggs.  
*beḥēra*, pl. *beḥērāt*, lake.  
*be'id*, pl. *bū'ada*, distant, far.  
*bélki*, perhaps.  
*bén*, between.  
*bērūsya*, Prussia.  
*bērusyānī*, Prussian.  
*bess*, enough, only.  
*bēt*, pl. *bīyūt*, house.  
*betā'*, *betā'a*, pl. *butū'*, belonging  
     to (genitival periphrasis).  
*bī*, in, with, by, at; also sign of  
     present.  
*bībān*, see *bāb*.  
*bidāl*, instead of.  
*bilād*, see *bāḷād*.  
*bint*, see *banāt*.  
*bīr*, see *bīyār*.  
*bišwēš*, slowly.  
*bīyār*, pl. of *bīr*, well.  
*bīyūt*, see *bēt*.

*bīziyāde*, more, too much, too  
     (with an adjective).

*bornēṭa*, see *barānīṭ*.

*būkra*, to-morrow.

*bunn*, coffee-beans.

## D and Ḍ.

*da*, *dā*, fem. *di*, pl. *dól*, this, these.

*dābaḥ*, *a*, slaughter.

*dāfa'*, *a*, pay.

*dāf'a*, (one) time, (once).

*dāfan*, *i*, bury.

*dāhab*, gold.

*ḍahr*, pl. *ḍuhūr*, back.

*dāḥal*, *u*, enter, go in.

*dā'if*, pl. *dū'afa*, weak.

*dāiyiq*, narrow.

*dākāḥīn*, pl. of *dukkān*, shop.

*dām*, *yedūm*, endure (last).

*damm*, blood.

*dānnoh*, *dānnīhā*, he, she con-  
     tinued.

*daqn*, pl. *duqūn*, chin, beard.

*daqq*, *u*, pound, knock; tattoo.

*dār*, pl. *diyār*, house.

*ḍārab*, *a*, strike.

*ḍarb*, pl. *ḍurūb*, blow.

*ḍarr*, *u*, damage.

*dāuwar*, *yid.*, turn, turn round.

*dāuwar 'ala*, look for.

*dāwa*, pl. *adwīye*, medicine.

*dawāfir*, pl. of *ḍufr*, nail (*ongle*),  
     claw.

*derwīš*, pl. *dārāwīš*, Dervish.

*dī*, see *da*.

*dī*, *dī*, give!

*dīḥik*, a, laugh.  
*dīk*, pl. *dīyūk*, cock.  
*dīlim*, dark.  
*dilwáqt*, now, immediately.  
*dīrs*, pl. *ḍurūs*, molar tooth.  
*diyār*, see *dār*.  
*doḥn*, millet.  
*dōl*, see *da*.  
*dōr*, pl. *adwār*, story of a house, turn.  
*dufr*, see *ḍawāfir*.  
*duhūr*, see *ḍahr*.  
*duhr*, midday, noon.  
*dukkán*, see *dākākin*.  
*duláb*, pl. *dawālīb*, cupboard, wardrobe.  
*dúnyā*, world, 'it' (in expressions about the weather).  
*duqún*, see *daqn*.

## F.

*fa, fe*, and, then.  
*fāḍī*, pl. *fāḍiyīn*, empty, free.  
*faḍl*, pl. *afḍāl*, goodness.  
*fāhhim*, *yif.*, explain.  
*faḥd*, pl. *afḥād*, thigh.  
*fā'ide*, pl. *fawḍ'id*, advantage.  
*fākīhā*, pl. *fawākih*, fruit.  
*faqīr*, pl. *fúqarā*, poor.  
*faqr*, poverty.  
*fār*, pl. *fīrān*, mouse, rat.  
*faránsa*, France.  
*fáras*, pl. *afrás*, mare.  
*fārḥa*, pl. *fīrāḥ*, hen.  
*fárrag*, *yif.*, show.  
*farrán*, pl. *-ín*, baker.

*fārše*, bedding, furniture.  
*faṣl*, pl. *fuṣúl*, chapter; season of the year.  
*fāt, ũ*, pass over, pass by.  
*fātaḥ*, a, open.  
*fātar*, i, breakfast.  
*fawā'id*, see *fā'ide*.  
*fawākih*, see *fākīhā*.  
*felā'ik*, pl. of *felúke*, boat.  
*fén*, where?  
*fenāgīn*, pl. of *fingán*, cup, bowl.  
*fēransāwī*, Frenchman, French.  
*fī*, in.  
*fīh*, there is.  
*fīḍil*, a, remain, be left.  
*fīhim*, a, understand.  
*fīkr*, pl. *āfkār*, thoughts.  
*fīngán*, see *fenāgīn*.  
*fīrāḥ*, see *fārḥa*.  
*fīriḥ*, a, rejoice.  
*fōq*, above, upstairs.  
*fúqara*, see *faqīr*.  
*fulán*, (Mr.) So-and-so.  
*fulūs*, money.  
*fumm*, pl. *afmām*, mouth, mouth-piece, (cigar-) holder.  
*fúraš*, pl. of *fúrše*, brush.  
*fuṣúl*, see *faṣl*.  
*fuṭúr*, breakfast.

## G.

*gā (gī), yīgī*, come.  
*ga'án*, pl. *-ín*, hungry.  
*gāb, í*, bring, fetch.  
*gābāl*, pl. *gibāl*, mountain.  
*gahánnam*, hell.

*gá'ī*, pl. -*īyīn*, coming, future.  
*galīd* (*gālīd*), ice, ice-cream.  
*gama'*, *a*, collect.  
*gamā'ā*, people, party.  
*gámal*, pl. *gimāl*, camel.  
*gamb*, pl. *agnāb*, side; near, by the side of.  
*gāmī'*, pl. *gawāmi'*, mosque.  
*gam'īye*, company, meeting.  
*gamīl*, pretty, beautiful.  
*gāmūs*, pl. *gawāmis*, buffalo.  
*ganā'in*, pl. of *genéne*, garden.  
*gār*, pl. *gīrān*, neighbour.  
*gārā*, *yīgrā*, happen.  
*garād*, locusts.  
*gārah*, *a*, wound.  
*gārye*, pl. *gawār*, female slave.  
*gau*, atmosphere, sky.  
*gāuwiz*, *yig*., marry.  
*gawāb*, pl. *agwābe*, answer, letter.  
*gawāmi'*, see *gāmī'*.  
*gawāmis*, see *gāmūs*.  
*gāzā'ir*, pl. of *gāzīra*, island.  
*gazzār*, pl. -*īn*, butcher.  
*gedīd*, pl. *gudād*, new.  
*genéne*, see *genā'in*.  
*gibāl*, see *gābāl*.  
*gībne*, cheese.  
*gidd*, pl. *agdād*, grandfather.  
*giddan*, very, exceedingly.  
*gimāl*, see *gámal*.  
*gins*, pl. *agnās*, sort, kind.  
*gīrān*, see *gār*.  
*gīrī*, *yīgrī*, flow, run.  
*gism*, pl. *āgsām*, body.

*gizān*, pl. of *gōz*, spouse, husband, pair.  
*gōh*, cloth.  
*gōz*, see *gizān*.  
*gōze*, wife.  
*gudād*, see *gedīd*.  
*gūm'a*, pl. *gūma'*, week.  
*gurnāl*, pl. *gurnālāt*, or *garānīl*, newspaper.  
*gūwa*, inside.  
*gūwānī*, inner.  
*guwār*, see *gārye*.

## Ġ.

*ḡādā*, lunch, midday-meal.  
*ḡadar* = *qīdir*.  
*ḡā'ib*, absent.  
*ḡāiyar*, *yig*., alter, change.  
*ḡālī*, pl. -*īyīn*, dear, expensive.  
*ḡalaḡāt*, pl. of *ḡālḡa*, mistake.  
*ḡānī*, pl. *agnīye*, rich.  
*ḡarb*, west.  
*ḡāsal*, *i*, wash.  
*ḡāḡā*, pl. *agḡīye*, lid, cover.  
*ḡawīḡ*, deep.  
*ḡazāl*, pl. *gizlān*, gazelle.  
*ḡēr*, other than.  
*ḡēroh*, another than he.  
*ḡīlī*, *yīḡlā*, be dear or expensive.  
*ḡīne*, riches, wealth.  
*gizlān*, see *ḡazāl*.  
*ḡubār*, dust.  
*ḡūnā*, song.  
*gurūb*, sunset.



## H.

*haġn*, pl. *húgun*, dromedary,  
camel for riding.

*hal-batt*, perhaps, probably.

*hamm*, care, anxiety.

*hán*, *u*, be easy, be light.

*häní'an*, your good health!

*hárab*, *a*, flee.

*háram*, pl. *ihrám*, pyramid.

*hát*, give!

*hávā*, air, weather, climate.

*hedīye*, pl. *hedāyā*, present.

*henák*, there.

*héne*, here.

*hígra*, flight of the Prophet,  
Hegira.

*hīye*, she.

*hudúm*, clothes.

*hum*, they.

*húwa*, he.

## H.

*hábaš*, Abyssinia.

*hábašī*, Abyssinian.

*habb*, *i*, love, like.

*habīb*, pl. *aḥbáb*, friend, lover.

*haddád*, pl. *-ín*, blacksmith.

*hadíd*, iron.

*hádír*, pl. *-ín*, present, ready.

*hága*, pl. *-át*, thing.

*hagar*, pl. *higára*, stone.

*hákā*, *yíhkī*, narrate.

*hakím*, pl. *húkamā*, learned man,  
doctor.

*hál*, pl. *aḥwál*, state, condition,  
circumstance.

*halál*, lawful.

*halīb*, milk.

*hamám*, pigeons; *hamáme*, a  
pigeon.

*hamír*, pl. of *humár*, donkey, ass.

*hammám*, pl. *hammāmát*, bath.

*hának*, pl. *aḥníke*, mouth.

*haqíqa*, truth.

*haqíqī*, real, true.

*haqq*, pl. *ḥuqúq*, justice, right.

*hára*, pl. *-át*, quarter of a town,  
lane.

*háram*, pl. *aḥrám*, harem.

*harám*, unlawful.

*háraq*, *u*, set on fire.

*harf*, pl. *ḥurúf*, letter of the  
alphabet.

*harīm*, pl. *-át*, woman, wife.

*harr*, heat, hot.

*ḥass*, *i*, feel.

*ḥašarát*, insects.

*ḥašīš*, herbs, grass; hemp pre-  
pared for smoking.

*ḥátab*, firewood.

*ḥaṭṭ*, *o*, put, place.

*hawālén*, round about.

*háyā(t)*, life.

*ḥazīrán*, June.

*ḥés*, because, since.

*ḥét*, pl. *ḥūtán*, wall.

*higára*, see *hagar*.

*hikáye*, pl. *-át*, story, tale.

*hílif*, *i*, swear, take an oath.

*hisáb*, pl. *-át*, bill, account.

*ḥūtán*, see *ḥét*.

*ḥoḍn*, bosom, embrace.

*ḥūkāmā*, see *ḥakīm*.  
*ḥukūme*, government.  
*ḥumār*, see *ḥemīr*.  
*ḥuqūq*, see *ḥaqq*.  
*ḥūrma*, pl. *ḥūram*, woman, old woman.  
*ḥurūf*, see *ḥarf*.  
*ḥuṣān*, pl. *aḥṣīne*, or *ḥēl*, horse.

## H.

*ḥābar*, pl. *aḥbār*, news.  
*ḥābaṭ*, *a*, knock, hit.  
*ḥabbāz*, pl. *-īn*, baker.  
*ḥad*, *yāḥod*, take.  
*ḥādam*, *i*, serve.  
*ḥaddām*, pl. *-īn*, servant.  
*ḥādra*, fem. of *āḥḍar*, green.  
*ḥāf*, *a*, fear.  
*ḥafīf*, pl. *ḥufāf*, light, easy, nimble.  
*ḥaiyāl*, pl. *-īn*, rider, horseman.  
*ḥaiyaṭ*, *yih.*, sew.  
*ḥaiyāt*, pl. *-īn*, tailor.  
*ḥāl*, pl. *aḥwāl*, uncle (maternal).  
*ḥālā*, country, open.  
*ḥāle*, pl. *ḥālāt*, aunt (maternal).  
*ḥālīṣ*, pl. *-īn*, finished, thoroughly, quite.  
*ḥall*, vinegar.  
*ḥallaṣ*, *yih.*, make ready, finish.  
*ḥāmas*, *ḥāmse*, five.  
*ḥāmis*, fifth.  
*ḥārig*, pl. *-īn*, external.  
*ḥārrag*, drive out.  
*ḥāṭib*, betrothed.  
*ḥāṭir*, wish, desire.

*ḥawāḡe*, pl. *-āt*, gentleman ; Sir !  
 (to Europeans.)  
*ḥēl*, horses (collectively).  
*ḥēme*, pl. *ḥiyam*, tent.  
*ḥēr*, pl. *ḥiyār*, good, blessing.  
*ḥiyam*, see *ḥēme*.  
*ḥōd*, take ! (imperative of *ḥad*.)  
*ḥōga*, pl. *-āt*, teacher.  
*ḥufāf*, see *ḥafīf*.  
*ḥūluṣ*, *a*, be finished.  
*ḥums*, pl. *aḥmās*, fifth part.

## ‘(ع).

*‘abd*, pl. *‘abīd*, slave, negro.  
*‘add*, *o*, bite.  
*‘āde*, pl. *-āt*, habit, custom.  
*‘afrīt*, pl. *‘afārīt*, demon.  
*‘afṣ*, things, luggage.  
*‘agā’iz*, pl. of *‘agūz*, old, aged.  
*‘āgam*, the Persians.  
*‘āgami*, Persian.  
*‘āgel*, haste, wheel.  
*‘agīb*, pl. *‘agā’ib*, wonderful.  
*‘agūz*, see *‘agā’iz*.  
*‘āiya*, illness.  
*‘aiyān*, pl. *-īn*, ill, sick.  
*‘ā’iz* (*‘āwuz*, *‘aūz*, pl. *‘a’uzīn*), wanting. (Used to express the verb ‘to want.’)  
*‘ala*, on, upon, against, over.  
*‘ala ṣṣān*, because of, for.  
*‘ālī*, pl. *-iyīn*, high.  
*‘ālim*, pl. *‘ālama*, learned.  
*‘āllaq*, *yī*, hang up.  
*‘āllim*, *yī*, teach.  
*‘amenāuwal*, last year.

*‘āmīl, yi’*, do.  
*‘amm*, pl. *‘a‘mām*, uncle (paternal).  
*‘an*, of, instead, about, than, from.  
*‘and*, with, at, near, *chez*. *‘andī*,  
*‘andak*, I have, thou hast, &c.  
*‘a‘qīl*, pl. *‘ūqala*, intelligent, clever.  
*‘aql*, mind, intelligence.  
*‘arab* (collectively), Arabs, Beduins; *ibnē ‘arab*, an Arab.  
*‘arabī*, Arabic, Arab (adj.).  
*‘arbāgi*, pl. *-īye*, cab-driver, coachman.  
*‘arūd*, broad.  
*‘arraf, yi’*, make known.  
*‘asal*, honey.  
*‘askārī*, pl. *‘asākir*, soldier.  
*‘āš, ī*, live.  
*‘āšara*, ten.  
*‘āšir*, tenth.  
*‘āšrīn*, twenty.  
*‘ātaš*, thirst.  
*‘aṭšān*, pl. *‘aṭāšā*, thirsty.  
*‘āuz*, see *‘a’iz*.  
*‘āwuz*, see *‘a’iz*.  
*‘āzzīl, yi’*, change (house).  
*‘én*, pl. *‘īyūn (á‘yun)*, eye, spring (of water).  
*‘idām*, pl. of *‘aḍm*, bone.  
*‘ilbe*, pl. *‘ilab*, case, box.  
*‘ilm*, pl. *‘ulūm*, knowledge.  
*‘īmīl, ī*, make, do.  
*‘īrif, a*, know.  
*‘īṭīš, a*, thirst.  
*‘omr*, age, life-time.  
*‘ošr*, pl. *‘ašār*, tenth, tenth part.  
*‘ozūme*, banquet.

*‘ūlama*, see *‘ālim*.  
*‘ulūm*, see *‘ilm*.  
*‘umr*, see *‘omr*.  
*‘ūqala*, see *‘a‘qīl*.  
*‘īyūn*, see *‘én*.  
*‘uzr*, excuse.

## K.

*ká‘ba*, the Kaaba at Mecca.  
*kabb, u*, pour out.  
*kaddāb*, pl. *-īn*, liar.  
*kāfā, yīkfī*, suffice.  
*kāfī*, pl. *-īyīn*, sufficient.  
*kāfir*, pl. *kuffār*, infidel.  
*kafr*, pl. *kufūr*, village.  
*kaḥḥ, u*, cough.  
*kalām*, speech, affair spoken of.  
*kālb*, pl. *kilāb*, dog.  
*kāllim, yik.*, speak.  
*kām*, some; how much? how many?  
*kāmān*, still, again, more.  
*kān, yekūn*, be.  
*kānūn*, pl. *kawānīn*, stove.  
*kās*, pl. *kāsāt*, cup.  
*kásar, a*, break.  
*kaslān*, pl. *kasālā*, idle, lazy.  
*kātab, ī*, write.  
*kātabā*, pl. of *kātīb*, scribe, secretary, clerk.  
*kātīb, yik.*, correspond with some one.  
*kātīb*, see *kātabā*.  
*kāttar, yik.*, increase, make more.  
*karwālīnī*, pl. *-īye*, locksmith.  
*kebīr*, pl. *kubār*, great, large.

*kéf*, how ?  
*ketír*, much, very.  
*kībīr*, *a*, be large, grow.  
*kilāb*, see *kālb*.  
*kīlme*, pl. *kalimāt*, word.  
*kitāb*, pl. *kūtub*, book.  
*kūf*, pl. *aktāf*, shoulder.  
*kītīb*, *u* = *kātab*.  
*kubār*, see *kebīr*.  
*kubbāīye*, pl. -*āt*, drinking-glass.  
*kul*, eat ! (imperative of *ākal*, eat.)  
*kull*, all, each, every.  
*kūrsī*, pl. *kārāsī*, chair, stool.  
*kūtub*, see *kitāb*.  
*kutubhāne*, pl. -*āt*, library.  
*kūwāīyīs*, nice, pretty.

## L.

*lá*, *la'*, no, not.  
*la'b*, game.  
*lában*, milk.  
*lābis*, (with acc.) clothed in.  
*lahm*, pl. *luhūm*, meat, flesh.  
*lāhze*, pl. -*āt*, moment, instant.  
*lākin*, but.  
*lāqā*, *yīlqī*, meet with, find.  
*laṭīf*, pl. *luṭāf*, pleasant, agreeable.  
*lau*, if.  
*lāzim*, necessary.  
*lé*, *lēš*, why ?  
*lē'inn*, because.  
*lél*, night.  
*léle*, pl. *layālī*, a night.  
*lī*, to, for (expresses the dative).

*lībīs*, *i*, dress oneself.  
*lihādd*, until.  
*lihýä*, pl. *lihā*, beard.  
*lī'ib*, *a*, play.  
*lisān*, pl. *alsīne*, tongue, language.  
*līssa*, still, not yet.  
*līzim*, *a*, be necessary.  
*lōn*, pl. *akwān*, colour.  
*lūga*, pl. *luḡāt*, language.  
*luhūm*, see *lahm*.  
*lukānda*, hotel.  
*luṭāf*, see *laṭīf*.  
*luzūm*, necessity.

## M.

*mā*, not.  
*mā*, with.  
*ma'ādīn*, pl. of *mādne*, minaret.  
*māblaḡ*, pl. *mābālīḡ*, sum, amount, total.  
*mabsūt*, pl. -*īn*, contented, pleased.  
*madd*, *i*, extend.  
*mādne*, see *ma'ādīn*.  
*maftūh*, open, opened.  
*magnūn*, pl. *magānīn*, crazy.  
*māḡrib*, west, sunset.  
*maḡāll*, pl. -*āt*, place, spot.  
*maḡāṭṭe*, pl. -*āt*, station.  
*maḡbūb*, fem. -*e*, lover, sweet-heart.  
*māhzān*, pl. *maḡāzin*, magazine, store.  
*maktūb*, pl. *mākātīb*, letter.  
*māl*, pl. *āmṡāl*, property, wealth.  
*mālā*, *yimlā*, fill.  
*mālik*, pl. *mulūk*, king.

*ma'lúm*, known; (adv.) of course, certainly.

*mämnúm*, pl. -*ín*, grateful.

*ma'múr*, pl. -*ín*, official.

*ma'na*, pl. *ma'ânî*, meaning, idea.

*maqáṣṣ*, pl. -*ât*, scissors.

*maqbul*, accepted.

*már'a*, pl. *niswân*, woman.

*máraḍ*, pl. *amráḍ*, illness.

*marîḍ*, pl. *márḍā*, ill.

*markib*, pl. *márakib*, ship.

*márra*, pl. -*ât*, time (once, &c.).

*ma'rúf*, known; favour, kindness.

*maṣárúwe*, pl. of *máṣrî*, Egyptian.

*maṣr*, Egypt, Cairo.

*máṣrî*, see *maṣárúwe*.

*mass*, a, touch.

*mašá'ih*, pl. of *šéḥ*, sheikh, village elder.

*mašhúr*, famous.

*mašriq*, sunrise, morning, east.

*mašrúb*, pl. -*ât*, drink, drunk.

*mašwî*, roast, roasted.

*maṭar*, pl. *amṭár*, rain.

*mausim*, season.

*maurwit*, *yim*, kill.

*me'állim*, pl. -*ín*, teacher, professor.

*mebí*, sale.

*medáuwar*, round, turned.

*medíne*, pl. *múdu*, town.

*medrése*, pl. *madáris*, school.

*mekátib*, pl. -*ín*, correspondent.

*meláuwin*, coloured, painted.

*melîḥ*, pl. *miláḥ*, nice, excellent.

*mendíl*, pl. *menádil*, pocket-handkerchief.

*meṣáḥḥ*, pl. -*ín*, traveller, passenger.

*meskín*, pl. *mesākín*, poor.

*meẓáiyin*, pl. -*ín*, barber.

*mi'a* = *ma'*.

*min*, from; than.

*mín*, who?

*mísä*, evening.

*mísik*, *i*, take hold of.

*miš*, she is not.

*miyāḥ*, pl. of *móiyē*, water.

*míye*, hundred.

*móiyē*, see *miyāḥ*.

*mót*, death.

*mū'ellif*, composer, author.

*múdde*, period, space of time.

*múdun*, see *medíne*.

*muftāḥ*, pl. *māfatīḥ*, key.

*muhímm*, important, interesting.

*mulúk*, see *mālik*.

*múmkín*, possible.

*múslim*, pl. -*ín*, Mohammedan (substantive).

*muš*, he is not, not.

*muštáḡil*, occupied.

## N.

*na'am*, yes; what do you say?

*nabát*, pl. -*ât*, plant, vegetation.

*nābî*, pl. *ambíyē*, prophet, the Prophet.

*nādā*, *yinādā*, call out.

*nādah*, a (*lî*), call (to).

*naḍḍāra*, pl. -*āt*, spectacles, telescope.

*nāḍḍif*, *yīn*., clean.

*nāfas*, breath.

*nāfi*, pl. -*īn*, useful.

*naggār*, pl. -*īn*, carpenter.

*nahār*, pl. -*āt*, day (as opposed to night).

*naḥle*, bee; collectively, *naḥl*, bees.

*nahr*, pl. *anhār*, river.

*nāḥle*, a palm-tree; collectively, *naḥl*, date-palms.

*na'l*, pl. *nī'āl*, sandal, sole.

*nām*, *ā*, sleep.

*nemsāwī*, Austrian.

*nār*, pl. *nīrān*, fire.

*nargīle*, nargileh (water-pipe for smoking).

*nās*, man, mankind, people.

*nāsaḥ*, *u*, copy out.

*nā'sān*, pl. -*īn*, sleepy.

*nāššif*, dry.

*nāṭar* = *māṭar*.

*naṭṭ*, *u*, jump.

*nāzar*, *u*, look, see.

*nebīd*, wine.

*nehāye*, end.

*nigm*, pl. *nugūm*, star.

*nīl*, Nile.

*nīrān*, see *nār*.

*nīswān* (*nīswa*), see *mār'a*.

*nīšif*, *a*, be dry.

*nīye*, pl. -*āt*, intention.

*nīzil*, *i*, descend.

*nugūm*, see *nigm*.

*nūr*, pl. *anwār*, light.

*nuṣṣ*, pl. *anṣāṣ*, half.

## Q.

*qá'ad*, *o*, sit, sit down.

*qābīl*, *yīq*., meet.

*qabl*, before.

*qadd*, size, form, quantity.

*qāḍī*, pl. *quḍāḥ*, judge.

*qadīm*, pl. *qudm*, old, ancient.

*qāfīle*, pl. *qawāfil*, caravan.

*qahwāgī*, pl. -*īye*, coffee-house keeper.

*qāhwe*, coffee.

*qāhwe*, pl. *qahāwī*, coffee-house, café.

*qāl*, *ū*, say, tell.

*qālam*, pl. *aqlām*, reed-pen.

*qalb*, pl. *qulūb*, heart.

*qalīl*, little of, few.

*qāmar*, moon.

*qamīṣ*, pl. *qumṣān*, shirt.

*qanāṣīl*, pl. of *qūnṣul*, consul.

*qandīl*, pl. *qanādīl*, old-fashioned lamp.

*qanṭāra*, pl. *qanāṭir*, bridge.

*qārā*, *ā*, read.

*qarīb*, pl. -*īn*, near.

*qārrab*, *yīqārrib*, approach.

*qaṣīr*, pl. -*īn*, short.

*qāṭa'*, *a*, cut.

*qatal*, *u*, kill, murder.

*qawām*, quickly.

*qāwī*, pl. *aqwīye*, strong, powerful; very.

*qīdir*, *a*, be able.

*qird*, pl. *qurúd*, monkey.  
*qirš*, pl. *qurúš*, piastre.  
*quddám*, before, in front of.  
*qudm*, see *qadím*.  
*qúllä*, pl. *qúlal*, native water-bottle.  
*quláb*, see *qalb*.  
*qúnşul*, see *qandášil*.  
*qûráiyib*, near.  
*qurúš*, see *qirš*.  
*qûşáiyar*, pl. -*ín*, short.  
*quşşád*, opposite to, in front of.  
*quşn*, cotton.  
*qúţta*, pl. *quţat*, cat ; collectively, *quţt*, cats.

## R.

*rá'ad*, *u*, thunder.  
*rábbûnâ*, Our Lord.  
*rabî*, spring (season).  
*rá'd*, thunder.  
*radd*, *u*, give back, return.  
*râdî*, pl. -*iyîn*, content.  
*ragîf*, pl. *ârgîfe*, loaf of bread.  
*râgil*, pl. *rigâle*, man.  
*râh*, *ú*, go, go away.  
*rahîş*, pl. *ruhâş*, cheap.  
*râmâ*, *yírmî*, throw.  
*raml*, sand.  
*ráqabä*, pl. *riqâb*, neck, throat.  
*râs* (fem.), pl. *ru'ús* or *rús*, head.  
*ridî*, *yírdä*, be content.  
*rigâle*, see *râgil*.  
*rigî*, *a*, come back.  
*rigl* (fem.), pl. *ârgul*, foot.  
*rîh*, pl. *riyâh*, wind.

*rîha*, odour.  
*ríkib*, *a*, ride.  
*riqâb*, see *ráqabä*.  
*rub*, pl. *arbâ'*, a quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ).  
*ruhâş*, see *rahîş*.  
*rús*, see *râs*.  
*ruzz*, rice.

## S and Ş.

*sá'a*, pl. *sā'ât*, hour, watch.  
*sa'al*, *a*, ask, beg.  
*sā'dî*, pl. -*îye*, watchmaker.  
*sába'*, *sabât*, seven.  
*ş'a'b*, pl. *ş'âb*, difficult ('*ala*, for).  
*sábab*, pl. *âsbâb*, ground, cause.  
*şabâh*, morning.  
*şábar*, *u*, be patient.  
*säbîl*, pl. *asbîlä*, public fountain.  
*sáfar*, pl. *asfâr*, journey.  
*sáfir*, *yis.*, travel.  
*şáfrâ*, fem. of *âşfar*, yellow.  
*şahh*, *a*, be correct, exact.  
*şâhîb*, pl. *aşhâb*, friend, proprietor.  
*şâhbe*, friend, proprietress.  
*şahîh*, pl. *şuhâh*, correct.  
*sahl*, pl. *suhûl*, easy.  
*şâhrâ*, pl. *şahârâ*, desert.  
*sá'id*, pl. *sú'ada*, happy, fortunate.  
*şá'id*, Upper Egypt.  
*sáiyib*, *yis.*, leave, let go.  
*sákan*, *u*, dwell.  
*sakrán*, pl. *sakára*, drunk.  
*salâşín*, pl. of *sultân*, sultan.  
*sállim*, pl. *salâlim*, stairs, steps.



*sállim*, *yis*. ('*ala*), salute.  
*sámā*, pl. *samāwāt*, heaven.  
*sāmiḥ*, *yis*., pardon, forgive.  
*sāna* (*séne*), pl. *sinīn* (*sanawāt*),  
 year.  
*ṣanādīq*, pl. of *ṣandūq*, box, case.  
*ṣandūq*, see above.  
*ṣār*, *ī*, become.  
*sāraq*, *a*, steal, rob.  
*sāwā*, *yīswā*, be worth.  
*sāwa*, together (*sāwa sāwa*).  
*ṣawābī*, pl. of *ṣobā*, finger.  
*ṣēf*, summer.  
*ṣidr*, pl. *ṣudūr*, breast, chest.  
*sigāra*, pl. *sagā'ir*, cigarette.  
*sikka*, pl. *sikak*, street, way.  
*sikkīne*, pl. *sekākīn*, knife.  
*sīmī*, *a*, hear.  
*sinūn*, see *sāna*.  
*sitt*, pl. *sittāt*, lady.  
*sitt*, *sille*, six.  
*siyāse*, politics, diplomacy.  
*ṣobā*, see *ṣawābī*.  
*sōdā*, fem. of *īswid*, black.  
*ṣubḥ*, morning.  
*sūd* (*sūdān*), pl. of *īswid*.  
*ṣuḥāḥ*, see *ṣaḥīḥ*.  
*suhūl*, see *sahl*.  
*súkkar*, sugar.  
*súkut*, *u*, be quiet, be silent.  
*sultān*, see *salāṭīn*.  
*sūq*, pl. *aswāq*, market, bazaar.

## Š.

*šab'ān*, pl. -*īn*, satiated.  
*šādīd*, pl. *šidād*, strong, powerful.

*šāf*, *ū*, see, look.  
*šafā'if*, pl. of *šiffe*, lip.  
*šágara*, tree ; collectively, *šágar*  
 (*ságar*), trees.  
*šahr*, pl. *ušhūr*, month.  
*šaḥṣ*, pl. *ašḥāṣ*, person.  
*šákar*, *u*, thank, praise.  
*šāl*, *ī*, carry, take away.  
*šām*, Syria.  
*šamāl* (*šimāl*), left (side), north.  
*šāms*, sun.  
*ša'r*, pl. *šu'ūr*, hair.  
*šaraq*, honour.  
*šarbāt*, sherbet.  
*šarq*, east, Orient.  
*šarṭ*, pl. *šurūṭ*, condition,  
 terms.  
*šāwa*, *yīšwī*, roast.  
*šē*, pl. *ašyāt*, thing.  
*šebābīk*, pl. of *šibbāk*, window.  
*šēḥ*, pl. *šiyūḥ* (*mašā'ih*), sheikh,  
 old man.  
*šibbāk*, see *šebābīk*.  
*šife*, recovery.  
*šiffe*, see *šafā'if*.  
*širīb*, *a*, drink ; *širīb edduḥān*,  
 smoke.  
*šīše*, hubble-bubble, water-pipe  
 (for smoking).  
*šīte*, winter, rainy season.  
*šiyūḥ*, see *šēḥ*.  
*šuḡl*, pl. *āšḡāl*, business, work.  
*šūrba*, soup.  
*šurūq*, sunrise.  
*šurūṭ*, see *šarṭ*.  
*šūwāiye*, some, a little, a few.

## T and Ṭ.

*tá'ā, ta'ālā*, pl. *ta'ālū*, Come here !*ta'állam, yit.*, study.*ta'b*, fatigue.*ṭab'*, nature, disposition.*ṭába'*, a, print.*ṭábaḥ, u*, cook.*ta'bān*, pl. -*īn*, tired.*ṭabī'a*, nature.*ṭabīb*, pl. *aṭibba*, physician.*ṭáfā, yitfī*, extinguish, put out.*tāgir*, pl. *tuggār*, merchant.*tāḥan*, a, grind.*taḥt*, under, down.*taḥīn*, pl. *tūḥana*, thick, coarse.*ṭaiyib*, pl. *ṭaiyibīn*, good.*ṭálab, u*, demand, ask.*tālit*, third.*tāll*, pl. *tīlāl*, hill.*ṭállā', yit.*, cause to rise, extract.*tamám*, completely, precisely.*táman*, price.*tamánye, támant*, eight.*tāmbāl*, pl. *tanāble*, idle, lazy.*tāmin*, eighth.*tāmmúz*, July.*tāni*, second.*taqīl*, pl. *tuqāl*, heavy.*ṭár, í*, fly.*ṭarabēze*, pl. -*át*, table.*tārbis, yit.*, bolt.*ṭarbūš*, pl. *ṭarābīš*, tarbush, fez.*tārgam, yit.*, translate.*tārīḥ*, pl. *tawārīḥ*, history, date.*ṭarīq*, pl. *ṭuruq*, way.*tāsi'*, ninth.*tašríf*, pl. -*át*, visit ; act of honouring.*ṭáwā, yitwī*, fold.*ṭáwī', yit.*, obey.*ṭawīl*, pl. *ṭuwāl*, long.*telát, teláte*, three.*temélli*, always, constantly.*ṭigāra*, trade, commerce.*tī'ib, a*, become tired.*tīrán*, pl. of *tór*, ox, bull.*tīs'a, tīs'at*, nine.*tór*, see *tīrán*.*tuggār*, see *tāgir*.*tult*, a third ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ).*ṭulú' eššāms*, sunrise.*tumn*, an eighth ( $\frac{1}{8}$ ).*ṭúruq*, see *ṭarīq*.*tus'*, a ninth ( $\frac{1}{9}$ ).*ṭuwāl*, see *ṭawīl*.

## W.

*wā, wē*, and.*wá'ad, yú'ad*, promise.*wābūr*, pl. -*át*, steamer, steam-engine, locomotive.*wádda, yiwáddī*, lead, carry.*wáddī*, pl. *widyán*, valley.*wága', yúga'*, pain, ache.*waḥdānī*, single (bachelor).*wáḥid*, fem. *wáḥde*, one.*wáḥrī*, late.*wákkil, yiw.*, give to eat.*waqt*, pl. *auqát*, time.*wálad*, pl. *aulád, wilád, wildán*, boy, child.*wālidén*, both the parents.

*wālī*, pl. *wulāh*, governor, ruler.  
*wāllā*, or.

*wāra*, behind.

*wāraq*, pl. *aurāq*, leaf, sheet of paper, paper.

*wārde*, rose ; collectively, *ward*, roses.

*wārrā*, *yīwārrī*, show.

*warrānī*, hind one, back one.

*wasf*, middle ; *fī wasf*, in the middle.

*wāfī*, low.

*wāya*, with.

*wāzan*, *yūzin*, weigh.

*wē*, see *wā*.

*widn*, pl. *widān* (*iudān*), ear.

*wīqī*, *yūqa*, fall.

*wilād*, see *wālad*.

*wildān*, see *wālad*.

*wīsih*, pl. *wīshīn*, dirty.

*wusf* = *wasf*.

## Y.

*yā*, Oh ! (sign of vocative.)

*yā . . . yā*, either . . . or.

*yāmīn*, right (side).

*yāmīn*, pl. *aimān*, oath.

*yā'ni*, that means, i. e.

*yōm*, pl. *aiyām* (*īyām*), day (twenty-four hours).

## Z.

*zāhar*, *a*, appear.

*zāhre*, pl. *āzhār*, flower ; collectively, *zahr*, flowers.

*zā'lán*, pl. *-īn*, angry, offended, bored.

*zūlzāle*, earthquake.

*zamān*, pl. *āzmīne*, time, long time.

*zānbīl*, pl. *zanābīl*, large native basket.

*zann*, *i* (*u*), think, suspect.

*zarīf*, pl. *zūrafa*, elegant, nice.

*zārqa*, fem. of *āzraq*, blue.

*zāy*, *zay*, *zē*, as, like.

*zēt*, oil.

*zībde*, butter.

*zī'il*, *a*, be angry, irritated.

*ziyāde*, increase, addition ; *bīzi-yāde*, more, too much.

*zugāg*, glass ; bottle.

*zūgāiyar* (= *sūgāiyar*), pl. *-īn*, small.

*zuqāq*, pl. *azīqqe*, lane, street.

*zūr*, forgery, perjury, force.

*zurq*, pl. of *āzraq*, blue.

## II. ENGLISH-ARABIC VOCABULARY

### A.

able, be, *qídir*, *a* (with present following).

abode, *mānzil*, pl. *manázil*.

above, *fóq*.

abscess, *qúrḥa*, pl. *qurúḥ*.

absent, *ǧá'ib*, pl. *-ín*.

absent, be, *ǧáb*, *í*.

Abyssinia, *bilád elḥábaš*.

Abyssinian, *ḥábašī*.

accept, *qíbil*, *a*; *istáqbal*, *yist*.

acclimatized, become, *i'áuwad*,  
'*ala* 'l*háwā*.

accompany, *šáḥib*, *yis*.

accusation, *šákawā*, pl. *šakáwī*.

accustom (oneself to something),  
*i'áuwad*, *yif*. 'alā *ḥága*.

accustomed, I am accustomed  
to, 'adēti, 'adētak, &c.; 'attī,  
'attak, &c. with present.

acre, *ḥaql*, pl. *ḥuqúl*; *feddán*.

adorn, *záiyin*, *yiz*.

adventure, *muḥáṭam*.

afraid, be, *ḥáf*, *yiháf*; *ḥife*, I  
was afraid.

Africa, *ifrīqíye*.

African, *ifrīqī*.

after (time), *bá'd*.

afternoon, *bá'd edḏúhr*.

afterwards, *bá'dén*; *bá'dē má*.

again, *lánī márra*.

age, *sinn*; 'omr.

agree upon, *ittáfaq*, *yittífīq* 'ala.

agreeable, *laṭíf*, pl. *luṭáf*.

agriculture, *faláḥa*, *zará'a*.

air, *háwā*.

Aleppo, *ḥālāb*.

Alexandria, *iskenderíye*.

Alexandrian, *iskenderání*.

Algerian, *gezā'irī*.

Algiers, *eggezā'ir*.

all, *kull*, *gamī'*.

allow, *samaḥ*, *a*.

almond, *lózē*; collectively, *lóz*,  
almonds.

almost, *taqrīban*.

alone, *wáḥid* (*wáḥdī*, *wáḥdak*,  
&c.).

along, *bī't-ṭúl*.

also, *kāmán*.

although, *wē'in*, *má'a'in*.

always, *dá'iman*, *temélli*.

America, *amiríkā*.

American, *amiríkī*.

amount, *máblağ*, pl. *mabálig*.

anchor, *mīrsát*.

ancient, *qadīm*.

and, *wē*, *wā*.

angry, be, *zī'il*, *a*.

animal, *ḥaiwán*, pl. *-át*.

answer, *gawāb*, pl. *agwābe*.  
 answer, *gāwib*, *yig*.  
 any (some), *hāddi*.  
 anything, *hāga*.  
 apothecary, *agzāhānā*.  
 appetite, *šahīye*, *šahwā*.  
 apple, *tiffāha*.  
 approach, *itqārrab*, *yitq*.  
 approve of, *istāḥsin*, *yist*.  
 approximate, *bittaqrib*.  
 April, *abrīl*; *nisān*.  
 Arab, *‘arabī*; collectively, *‘arab*; *‘arab*, pl. *bānī ‘arab*.  
 Arabia, *bilād e‘arab*; *gezīret e‘arab*.  
 Arabian, Arabic, *‘arabī*.  
 arm (lower), *dirā‘*, pl. *ādru‘*.  
 arm (upper), *sā‘id*, pl. *sawā‘id*.  
 around, *ḥawwālén*.  
 arrange, *rāttib*, *yir*.  
 arrangement, *tārtīb*.  
 arrival, *wuṣūl*.  
 arrive, *wīṣil*, *yūṣal*.  
 arrow, *sahm*, pl. *sihām*.  
 as, *zay*.  
 ashamed, be, *istāḥya*, *yistāḥī*.  
 Asia, *bilād eššarq*.  
 ask (demand), *ṭalab*, *u*.  
 ask (question), *sā‘al*, *a*.  
 assent, *rīdī*, *yirḏā*.  
 astonished, be, *it‘aggāb*, *yit‘ala*.  
 at, *bi*.  
 atmosphere, *hāwā*.  
 attention, pay, *wī‘i*, *a*.  
 auction, *mazād*.  
 August, *agūstus*.

aunt, *‘ammā*, pl. *-āt*; (maternal), *ḥāle*, pl. *-āt*.  
 Austria, *ennīmsā*.  
 Austrian, *nīmsāwī*.  
 author, *mu‘ellif*.  
 authorized, *ma‘zūn*.  
 authority, *ḥukūme*.  
 autumn, *ḥarīf*.  
 awake (intrans.), *ṣīḥī*, *a*.

## B.

back, *ḍahr*, pl. *ḍuhār*.  
 bad, *baṭṭāl*, pl. *-īn*; *rādī*, pl. *ardīye*.  
 bake (bread), *ḥābaz*, *i*.  
 baker, *ḥabbāz*, pl. *-īn*.  
 balance (scales), *mīzān*, pl. *mayāzīn*.  
 bale (of goods), *fārde*, pl. *fardāt*.  
 banker, *ṣarrāf*, pl. *-īn*.  
 banquet, *‘ozūme*, pl. *‘azā‘im*.  
 barber, *mēzāyīn*, pl. *-īn*.  
 bark (dogs), *nābaḥ*, *a*.  
 barley, *ša‘īr*.  
 barrel, *barmīl*, pl. *barāmīl*.  
 basket, *sālle*, pl. *silāl*; *zānbil*, pl. *zanābīl*.  
 bath, *ḥammām*, pl. *-āt*.  
 be, *kān*, *ū*.  
 beans, *fūl*.  
 bear, *dībbe* pl. *dībāb*.  
 bear (carry), *ḥāmal*, *i*.  
 bear fruit, *ṭaraḥ*, *a*.  
 beard, *liḥye*, pl. *liḥa*.  
 beat, *ḍarab*, *a*.  
 beautiful, *kūwāyīs*, pl. *-īn*.

beauty, *gamál*.  
 because, *ḥés, lē'inn*.  
 become, *šár, í*.  
 bed, *farš, fārša*, pl. *furúš*; *serír*.  
 bee, *náḥle*; collectively, *naḥl*.  
 beer, *bíra*; native beer, *búz*.  
 beetle, *gu'rán*, pl. *ga'ārín*.  
 before (place), *quddám*.  
 before (time), *qabl*.  
 beforehand, *qáblan*; *auwálan*.  
 beg, *šáḥat, a*.  
 beg (request), *itrágga, yil*.  
 begin, *ibtáda, yibtídi*.  
 beginning, *ibtáda*; *auwul*.  
 beginning, in the, *ášloh*.  
 behind, *wárā*.  
 believe, *'ámin, yi'*.  
 belly, *baṭn*, pl. *buṭún*.  
 belonging to, *betá'*, fem. *betá'et*,  
 pl. *buṭá'*.  
 belt, *ḥizám*, pl. *-át*.  
 bench, *maṣṭaba*, pl. *maṣáṭib*.  
 Berberine, *bärbärí*, pl. *barábra*.  
 beside, *ganb (gamḥ)*.  
 betimes, *bādrí*.  
 better, *áḥsan*.  
 bill, *ḥisáb*, pl. *-át*.  
 bird, *ṭér*, pl. *ṭiyúr*.  
 birth, *wiláde*.  
 bit (harness), *ligám*, pl. *lúgum*.  
 bite; *'aḍḍ, o*.  
 bitter, *murr*, pl. *'amrár*.  
 black, *íswid*, fem. *sódā*, pl. *súd*.  
 bless, *bárik, yi*.  
 blessed, *mūbáarak*.  
 blind, *á'ma*, fem. *'amyā*, pl. *'amyán*.

blood, *damm*, pl. *dímā*.  
 blossom, *záḥhar, a*.  
 blow, *dárbe, ḥábḷa*.  
 blue, *ázraq*, fem. *zárqa*, pl. *zurq*.  
 boat, *fálúke*, pl. *feld'ík*.  
 body, *gism*, pl. *'agsám*.  
 boiled, *maslúq*.  
 bone, *'aḍm*, pl. *'iḍám*.  
 book, *kitáb*, pl. *kútub*.  
 born, be, *inwálad*.  
 borrow, *istálaf, yist*.  
 both, *e'etnén*.  
 bowl, *kás*, pl. *-át*.  
 box, *šandúq*, pl. *šanādíq*; *'álbe*,  
 pl. *'ólab*.  
 boy, *wálad*, pl. *wilád*.  
 branch, *far'*, pl. *fūrú*.  
 brandy, *'araq*; *kunyák*.  
 bread, *'éš*; home-baked, *'éš bēṭi*.  
 breadth, *'arḍ*.  
 break, *kásar, i*; *kássar, yik*;  
*inkásar, yinkísir*.  
 breast, *šidr*, pl. *šudúr*; woman's  
 breasts, *bizz*, pl. *abzaz (bizáz)*.  
 breath, *náfas*.  
 brick, *ṭúba*.  
 bride, *'arúse*, pl. *'ará'is*.  
 bridegroom, *'aris*, pl. *'irsán*.  
 bridge, *qanṭára*, pl. *qanāṭir*.  
 bring, *gáb, í*.  
 bring back, *rágga', yir*.  
 bring forth, *wilidet, túlid*.  
 bring near, *qárrab, yiq*.  
 bring up, *rábbā, yirábbi*.  
 broad, *wási'*, pl. *-ín*; *'aríḍ*.  
 broom, *maqáššā*, pl. *-át*.

brother, 'aḥ, pl. 'iḥwān, 'iḥwe (in construction, 'aḥū).

brother-in-law (a man's), ṣahr, pl. aṣhar.

brother-in-law (a woman's), silf, pl. salā'if.

brown, 'āsmar, fem. sāmrā, pl. sumr.

brush, fūrše, pl. fūraš.

brush, fārraš, yif.

buffalo, gāmūs, pl. gazwāmīs.

build, bānā, yibnī.

building, bīnā, pl. abnīye.

bull, tór, pl. tīrán.

burden, ḥāml, pl. aḥmāl.

burial, ganāze.

burn, wāla', yūla'.

burn down, inhāraq, i; iḥāraq, i.

burn up (intrans.), iḥtāraq, yiḥtīriq (iḥāraq).

burn up (trans.), ḥāraq, u.

bury, dāfan, i.

bush, šūgéra, pl. -āt.

business, mašláḥa, pl. mašāliḥ; šuḡl, pl. āšḡāl.

but, lákin.

butcher, gazzār, pl. -īn.

butter, zībde.

button, zirr, pl. zurár.

buy, ištārā, yištīrī.

by all means, ummāl, ma'lúm.

### C.

cab, 'arabīye, pl. -āt.

cactus, šubbér.

café (coffee-house), qáḥwe.

Cairene, mašrī, pl. mašárūwe.

Cairo, mašr; mašr elqáhira.

calf, 'iḡl, pl. 'uḡúl.

calico, šīt.

call, nádah, a (to some one, lī).

call (name), sámmā, yisámmī.

call (= my name is, thy name is, &c.), 'ismī, 'ismak, 'ismoh, &c.

camel, gámal, pl. gimāl.

camel (for riding), hegín, pl. húgun.

candle, šém'a, pl. -āt.

cannon, mádfa', pl. madāfi'.

captain, re'is, pl. rú'asa.

caravan, qáfíle, pl. qawáfíle.

carcase, gífē, pl. gíyaf.

carpenter, naggár, pl. -īn.

carpet, seggáde, pl. segāgíd.

carriage, 'arabīye, pl. -āt.

carry, ḥámal, i.

castle, serāye, pl. -āt.

cat, qúṭṭa; collectively, quṭṭ.

catarrh, názle.

catch hold, mísik, i.

cause, šābāb, pl. asbāb.

cease, ḥúluṣ, a.

cedar, erz.

cellar, qabw, pl. aqbīye.

centre, mérkez, pl. marákiz.

century, 'ašr, pl. a'šár.

certain, akíd.

certainly, ummāl; ma'lúm.

chair, kúrsī, pl. kārāsī.

chalk, ṭabāšīr.

chameleon, ḥārbāye.



- change, *teğyîr*; (money, *fákka*).  
 change, *ğáiyar*, *yig*; *báddil*, *yib*.  
 change (house), *'ázzil*, *yi*.  
 change (money), *šaraf*, *i*.  
 changeable, *mutğáiyar*.  
 character, *ḥulq*, pl. *'ahlaq*.  
 charcoal, *fahm*; one piece, *fáhme*.  
 cheap, *raḥîš*, pl. *ruḥáš*.  
 cheat, *ğaşš*, *u*.  
 cheek, *ḥadd*, pl. *ḥudúd*.  
 cheerful, *mabsút*, pl. *-in*.  
 cheese, *gíbne*.  
 chess, *šaṭráng*.  
 chest (human), *šidr*; (box), *šandúq*.  
 chest of drawers, *burróh*.  
 chestnut, *kastáne*.  
 child, *wálad*, pl. *úlad* (*wilád*).  
 chin, *daqn*, pl. *duqún*.  
 China, *bilád eššín*.  
 Chinese, *šinî*.  
 choose, *náqqā*, *yináqqī*; *intáḥab*,  
*yintáḥib*; *iḥtár*, *yihṭár*.  
 Christ, *elmäsîḥ*.  
 Christian, *našránî*, pl. *našárā*.  
 church, *kenîse*, pl. *kānā'is*.  
 cigarette, *sigára*, pl. *sig'ir*.  
 circumstance, *ḥál*, pl. *aḥwál*.  
 cistern, *šahríg*, pl. *šahāríg*.  
 citadel, *qál'a*, pl. *qílā'*.  
 clean, *naḍíf*, pl. *mudáf*.  
 clean, *náḍḍaf*, *yin*.  
 clear (plain), *záhir*, pl. *-ín*.  
 clear, be, *bán*, *a*; *záhar*, *a*.  
 clear, make, *ázhar*, *i*.  
 climate, *hárwā*.  
 cloak, *burnús*, pl. *barānîs*; (Arab),  
*'abáye*, pl. *'óbi*; (European),  
*sáko*, pl. *sākawát*.  
 cloth (material), *gólḥ*, *gúlḥ*.  
 cloth (table-), *bíz essúfra*; *mí-*  
*fraš*.  
 clothes, *hudúm*.  
 cloud, *ğém*, pl. *ğiyám*.  
 clover, *bersím*.  
 coast, *šāfī*, pl. *šawáfī*.  
 cock, *dík*, pl. *dīyúk*.  
 coffee (drink), *qáhwe*; (beans),  
*bunn*.  
 coffee-cup, *fingán*, pl. *fenāğín*.  
 coffer, *šandúq*, pl. *šanādíq*.  
 cold, *bard*; adj. *bárid*.  
 colour, *lón*, pl. *'alwán*.  
 colour, *láuwan*, *yiláuwin*.  
 column, *'āmúd*, pl. *'awāmíd*.  
 comb, *mīšṭ*, pl. *amšát*.  
 come, *ğá*, *yíğī*.  
 come! (imperative), *ta'ále*, fem.  
*ta'ālī*, pl. *ta'álū*.  
 command, *'amr*, pl. *'awámir*.  
 command, *'amar*, *yū'mur* (*bī*).  
 common, *wardinārī*.  
 compare, *dāhā*.  
 complain, *ištáka*, *yīštíkī*.  
 compose (write), *'állif*, *yi*.  
 concord, *ittihád*; *ittifáq*.  
 condition, *ḥál*, pl. *aḥwál*; *šarṭ*,  
 pl. *šurát*.  
 conquer, *gálab*, *i*; *ğílīb*, *i*.  
 consent, *riḍā*, *a* (*bī*).  
 consider, *ištákar*, *yīštíkīr*.  
 Constantinople, *istambúl*.

content, *rādī*, pl. *-īyīn*; *mabsūt*.  
 convenient, *menāsīb*, pl. *-īn*.  
 conversation, *mehāwāra*.  
 cook, *ṭabbāḥ*, pl. *-īn*.  
 cook (trans.), *ṭabāḥ*, *u*.  
 cook (intrans.), *ḡīlī*, *yīḡlī*.  
 cool, *bārrad*, *yibārrid*.  
 cool oneself, *ilbārrad*, *yilb*.  
 copper, *naḥās*.  
 copy, *nāsaḥ*, *a*.  
 copy-book, *dāstār*, pl. *dāstār*.  
 cord, *ḥābl*, pl. *ḥibāl*.  
 corkscrew, *barīma*.  
 corn (grain), *qamḥ*.  
 correct, *ṣaḥīḥ*, pl. *ṣiḥāḥ*.  
 cost, how much does . . . cost?  
     = *bikām*?  
 costly, *nafīs*; *tamīn*.  
 cotton, *quṭn*.  
 cough, *kūḥḥa*.  
 cough, *kaḥḥ*, *u*.  
 count, *ḥasab*, *i*.  
 country, *bālād*, pl. *bilād*.  
 cousin, *ibnē 'amm*; *bintē 'amm*;  
     *ibnē ḥāl*; *bintē ḥāl*.  
 cover, *ḡātā*, pl. *aḡṭīye*.  
 cover, *ḡāṭṭa*, *yigāṭṭī*.  
 cow, *bāqara*; collectively, *bāqar*.  
 cradle, *mahd*.  
 crazy, *magnūn*, pl. *magānīn*.  
 cream, *qīṣṭa*.  
 crier (public), *mēnādī*.  
 crime, *ḡināye*, pl. *ganāyā*.  
 crocodile, *timsāḥ*, pl. *lamāsīḥ*.  
 cruel, *qāsī*, pl. *-īyīn*.  
 cry, *'āyāṭ*, *yī'*.

cry out (publicly), *nādā*.  
 cunning (subs.), *ḥāle*, pl. *ḥīyāl*.  
 cup, *ḡingān*, pl. *fenāḡīn*; *kās*, pl.  
     *-āt*.  
 curtain, *sitāre*, pl. *salā'ir*.  
 custom, *'āde*, pl. *-āt*.  
 custom-house, *ḡumruk*.  
 customs (duty), *ḡumruk*.  
 cut, cut off, *qāṭa'*, *a*.  
 cypress, *saru*.  
 Cyprus, *qúbrus*.

## D.

dagger, *ḥāngar*, pl. *ḥanāḡir*.  
 daily, *yōmāṭī*.  
 damage, *ḡarr*, *u*.  
 Damascus, *eššām*.  
 Damietta, *dimyāt*.  
 dance, *rāqaṣ*, *u*.  
 dancer (female), *ḡazīye*, pl.  
     *ḡawāzī*.  
 danger, *ḥāṭar*, pl. *aḥṭār*.  
 dark (without light), *ḡālim*; (of  
     colours), *ḡamīq*.  
 date (day), *tārīḥ*.  
 date (fruit), *bālaḥa*; collectively,  
     *bālaḥ*.  
 date-palm, *nāḥle*; collectively,  
     *naḥl*.  
 daughter, *bint*, pl. *banāt*.  
 day (twenty-four hours), *yōm*, pl.  
     *iyām*; (as opposed to night),  
     *nahār*, pl. *-āt*.  
 day before yesterday, *auwal*  
     *embāreḥ*.

day, by, *binnaḥār*.

dead, *máiyil*, pl. *amwát*.

death, *môt*.

debtor, *madyún*.

December, *desember* (*kānún el'aúwal*).

deed (action), *fīl*, pl. *af'ál*.

deep, *ḡawīf*.

delay, *il'āḥḥar*, *yil'*.

demand, *ṭálab*, *u*.

demon, 'afrit, pl. 'afārit.

depart, *sáfir*, *yisáfir*.

departure, *sáfar*.

Dervish, *dārwiš*, pl. *darāwiš*.

descend, *nízil*, *i*.

describe, *wáṣaf*, *yúṣaf*.

description, *wáṣfā*, *mewáṣfā*.

desert, *ṣáḥrā*, pl. *ṣaḥārā*; *ḥálā*.

desire, *rígib*, *a*.

devil, *šēṭán*, pl. *šayāṭín*.

dew, *nádā*.

die, *mát*, *ú*; (of = *min*.)

difficult, *ṣa'b*, pl. *ṣi'áb*; this is

difficult for me, *di ṣa'b 'aléyā*.

dig, *ḥáfar*, *u*.

direction, *naḥīye*, pl. *nawāḥī*.

director, *názir*.

dirt, *wasaḥ*; *waḥl*.

dirty, *wisiḥ*, pl. *wiṣḥín*.

discontented, *muš ráḍī*; *muš mabsúṭ*.

discover, *káṣaf*, *i*.

disgraceful, *fáḥiṣ*.

disgusting, *qarfán*.

dish, *ṣaḥn*, pl. *ṣuḥán*.

disorder, *laḥbáṭa*.

distant, *be'id*, pl. *bú'ade*; (from = 'an.)

ditch, *ḥándaq*, pl. *ḥanádiq*.

do, 'imil, *i*.

doctor, *ḥakīm*, pl. *ḥúkamā*.

dog, *kālb*, pl. *kilāb*.

dollar, *riyāl*, pl. -*át*.

donkey, *ḥumār*, pl. *ḥamīr*.

door, *bāb*, pl. *abwāb* or *bībān*.

door-keeper, *bauwāb*, pl. -*ín*.

doubt, *šakk*, pl. *šukúk*; without doubt, *bíla šakk*.

doubt, *šakk*, *yešúkk*.

down, *taḥt*.

dragoman, *tergumán*, pl. *tarā-gimín*.

draw (design), *šauwar*, *yīṣ*.

drawer, *durg*, pl. *durúg*.

drawers, *libās*, pl. *álbiṣe*.

dress, *lábbis*, *yil*.

dress oneself, *libis*, *a*.

drink, *mašrúb*, pl. -*át*; *šurb*.

drink, *širib*, *a*.

drive, *rāḥ*, *ú* (*bilwabúr*, *bil'ara-bíye*).

driver, 'arbáḡī, pl. -*íye*.

dromedary, *ḡaḡín*, pl. *ḡuḡun*.

drop, *núqṭa*, pl. *núqaṭ*.

drunk (intoxicated), *sakrán*, pl. *sakára*.

dry, *nāšif*, pl. -*ín*.

dry (intrans.), *nāšif*, *a*.

dry (trans.), *nāššif*, *yin*.

duck, *báṭṭe*; collectively, *baṭṭ*.

duration, *múdde*.

dust, *turāb*.

duty, *wáǧib*, *wáǧbe*, pl. -*át*.  
 dwell, *sákan*, *u*.  
 dwelling, *mānzil*, pl. *manázil*.

**E.**

each, *kullē wáǧid*.  
 ear, *widn*, pl. *ōdān* or *iudān*.  
 early, *bādrī*.  
 earth, 'arḍ.  
 earthquake, *zālzāle*, pl. *zalázil*.  
 east, *elmášriq*.  
 east wind, *háwā šárqī*.  
 eastern, *šárqī*.  
 easy, *sahl*, pl. *suhúl*; *háiyin*.  
 eat, *akal*, *yákul*.  
 edge, *táraf*, pl. *aṭráf*.  
 egg, *bēḍa*, pl. *bēḍāt*; collectively, *bēḍ*.

Egypt, *mašr*; *elmašr*.

Egyptian, *mášrī*.

either . . . or, *yá . . . yá*.

elbow, *ku'*, pl. *ki'án*.

elegant, *zaríf*, pl. *zúrafa*.

elephant, *fil*, pl. *afyál*.

emerald, *zumúrrud*.

emperor, *imberaṭúr*.

employment, *šugl*, pl. *ašǧál*.

empty, *fāḍī*, pl. -*iyín*.

end, *niháye*.

endure (bear), *ihtámmal*, *yiht*.

endure (last), *istaqám*, *yastaqím*.

enemy, 'adū, pl. *ā dā*.

England, *bilād el'ingelíz*.

English, *ingelízī*.

enough, *bi-kifáye*; *bess*.

enter, *dáhal*, *u*.

entertainment, *mubásṭa*.

entirely, *ḥáliš*.

entrance (coming in), *madḥúl*,  
 pl. -*át*.

entrance (way in), *duḥúl*.

envelope, *zarf*, pl. *zurúf*.

envelope, *laff*, *i*.

errand, *māšwār*, pl. *māšāwír*.

error, *ǧálṭa*, pl. *ǧalaṭát*.

eunuch, *ǧa*, pl. *ǧāwát*.

Europe, 'ūrúbbā.

European, 'ūrubbáwī; *fréngī*.

even, *ḥátta*.

evening, *mísä*; 'ešä.

events, at all, 'ala *kullī ḥál*.

every, *kull* (unchangeable).

everywhere, *fī kullī máṭrah*.

examination, *imtiḥān*, pl. -*át*.

examine, *imṭáhan*, *yimṭíhin*.

example, *másal*, pl. *amsál*.

e. g., *másalan*.

excellent, 'azím, pl. 'uzám.

except, *ǧér*; *illā*.

excuse oneself, *i'tázar*, *yī'tízir*  
 (*min*).

exist, *kán*, *ú*.

existence, *wuǧúd*.

expense, at his, 'ala *kísoh*.

experience, *tagríbe*, pl. *tagárib*.

explanation, *tafsír*.

expression, 'ebára.

extend, *madd*, *i*.

extinguish, *ṭafā*, *yíṭfi*.

eye, 'én, pl. 'yún, *áyun*.

eye-brow, *ḥágib*, pl. *ḥawágib*.

eye-glass, *naḍḍára*, pl. -*át*.

eye-lash, *remš*, pl. *rēmúš*.  
 eye-lid, *gifn*, pl. *gufún*.

## F.

fable, *ḥikáya*, pl. -*át*.  
 face, *wišš*, pl. *wušúš*.  
 faith, *'imán*.  
 faithful, *mú'mín*, pl. -*ín*.  
 fall, *wiqi'*, *yúqa'*.  
 false, *mēzáuwar*.  
 falsify, *záuwar*, *yiz*.  
 fame, *fahr*.  
 fan, *mār wáḥa*, pl. *mār wáḥ*.  
 far, *bé'id*, pl. *bú'ada*.  
 farewell, *widdá'*.  
 fast, *šám*, *ú*.  
 fast-month, *ramaḍán*.  
 fat (adj.), *múdhin*; *semín*.  
 fate, *qísma*.  
 father, *'ab* (in construction, *'abū*).  
 fault, *gálat*.  
 favour, *ma'rúf*; do me the  
     favour, *i'millī ma'rúf*.  
 fear, *ḥóš*.  
 feather, *rīše*.  
 February, *febrá'ir* (*šubát*).  
 feed, *wákkil*, *yiw*; *'állak*, *yī'*.  
 feel, *ḥass*, *i*.  
 festival, *'id*, pl. *a'yád*.  
 fetch, *gáḥ*, *í*.  
 fever, *ḥúmma*.  
 few, *a*, *kám* (with sing.).  
 fez, *ṭarbúš*, pl. *ṭarābīš*.  
 fig, *tíne*; collectively, *tín*.  
 fig-tree, *šágart* *tín*.

figure, *šúra*, pl. *šúwar*.  
 fill, *málā*, *yímlā*.  
 finally, *nihá'itoh*.  
 find, *wágad*, *yúgid*.  
 fine, *rafī'* (*rūfáiyá'*).  
 finger, *šobá'*, pl. *šawábi'*.  
 finish, *ḥállas*, *yih*.  
 finished, *mistúwī*.  
 finished, become, *istáwā*, *yist*.  
 fire, *nár*, pl. *nīrán*.  
 fire-wood, *ḥáṭab*.  
 firm (adj.), *šādíd*, pl. *šidád*.  
 firstly, *qáblan*; *auwálan*.  
 fish, *sámakā*; collectively, *sámak*.  
 fish, *šáiyad*, *yīš*.  
 fit (of clothes, &c.), *gá*, *yígī 'ala*.  
 flame, *liháb*.  
 flat, *mēsáṭṭaḥ*.  
 flea, *bargút*, pl. *barāgút*.  
 flee, *hárab*, *a*.  
 flight (of the Prophet), *hígra*.  
 floor, *arḍíye*.  
 flower, *záhre*, pl. *zuhúr* (*azhár*).  
 fly, *dibbáne*; collectively, *dibbán*.  
 fly, *ṭár*, *í*.  
 foal, *muhr*, pl. *amhár*.  
 foam, *rágwa*.  
 fog, *šābúra*.  
 fold, *ṭáwā*, *yíṭwī*.  
 fool, *magnún*, pl. *māgānín*.  
 foot, *riḡl*, pl. *árgul*.  
 foot (of a mountain), *safḥ*.  
 foot-path, *ṭaríq*, pl. *ṭúraq*.  
 foot-stool, *kúrsī*, pl. *kārāsī*.  
 for, *lī*; *min šán*; *'ala šán*;  
     *lē'inn*.

forbid, *mána'*, *a*.  
 forbidden, *mamnú'*; *ḥarām*.  
 fore (adj.), *áuwal*.  
 fore-arm, *dirā'*, pl. *ádru'*.  
 forehead, *gebín*, pl. *agbān*.  
 foreign, *ġarīb*, pl. *ġúraba*; *bar-rānī*.  
 forenoon, *qabl eḍḍúhr*.  
 forget, *nísī*, *a*.  
 fork, *šōka*, pl. *šúwak*.  
 forward, *yállā*; *yalláh*.  
 France, *fránsā*.  
 Frank (European), *ifrāngī*.  
 fraud, *ḥidā'*; *ġišš*.  
 free, *ḥorr*, pl. *'aḥrār*.  
 free, set, *sáiyib*, *yis*.  
 French, *fêransáwī*.  
 fresh, *ṭārī*; *ṭāze*.  
 Friday, *yóm eggúm'a*.  
 friend, *ḥābīb*, pl. *aḥbāb*; *ṣāḥib*,  
 pl. *aṣḥāb*.  
 friend (fem.), *ṣāḥbe*, pl. *-āt*.  
 friendship, *maḥābbe*; *ṣūḥbe*.  
 frog, *dúfda'*, pl. *ḍafādi'*.  
 from, *min*; *min 'and*; *'an*.  
 fruit, *fawākih*.  
 full, *malyān*.  
 funeral, *ganāze*.  
 furniture, *mōbīliya*; *farš*.  
 future, *mustāqbal*.

## G.

gain, *kísib*, *i*.  
 gallop, *ramḥ*.  
 game (play), *lā'b*, pl. *a'lāb*.

garden, *genéne*, pl. *genā'in*;  
*bostān*, pl. *basātīn*.  
 gardener, *genā'inī*, pl. *-īye*.  
 gate, *bauwābe*, pl. *-āt*; *bāb*, pl.  
*bībān*.  
 gather, *gāma'*, *a*.  
 gay (colour), *mēlāuwīn*.  
 gazelle, *ġazāl*, pl. *ġizlān*.  
 general (adj.), *'umūmī*.  
 generally, *'umūman*; *ġāliban*.  
 genuine, *ḥaqīqī*, pl. *-iyīn*.  
 geography, *ġuġrāfiya*.  
 German, *almānī*; *bêrusiānī*.  
 get up, *qām*, *yeqūm*.  
 gift, *'aṭīye*, pl. *'aṭáyā*.  
 giraffe, *zurāfe*.  
 girdle, *ḥizām*, pl. *-āt*.  
 girl, *ṣabāye*, pl. *ṣabāyā*; *bint*, pl.  
*bandī*.  
 give, *'āṭā*, *yīṭī*; *āda*, *yīdī*.  
 glass (material), *zugāġ*; (vessel),  
*kubbāye*, pl. *-āt*.  
 go, *rāḥ*, *ū*; *mīšī*, *yīmšī*.  
 go (on foot), *rāḥ māšī*.  
 go asleep, *nām*, *ā*.  
 go away, *ṭīlī*, *a*; *rāuwaḥ*.  
 go out, *ṭīlī*, *a*; *ḥārag*, *u*.  
 God, *allāh*. Please God, *in-ša-*  
*allāh*. Praise God, *elḥāmdu*  
*lillāh*.  
 gold, *dāhab*.  
 good, *ṭāiyib*, pl. *-īn*; *mālīḥ*, pl.  
*mulāḥ*.  
 goodness, *faḍl*, pl. *aḍḍāl*.  
 goose, *wēzze*; collectively, *wizz*.  
 government, *ḥukūme*, pl. *-āt*.

gown (man's), *qusṭān*, pl. *qasāṭīn* ;  
*gallabīye*.

gracious, *karīm*.

gradually, *bišweš*.

grain, *qamḥ*.

granddaughter, *bint el'ibn* ; *bint elbint*.

grandfather, *gedd*, pl. *agḏād*.

grandmother, *gédde*, pl. -*āt*.

grandson, 'ibn el'ibn ; 'ibn elbint.

grass, *ḥašīš*.

grave (subs.), *túrbe*, pl. *túrab*.

gray (ash-coloured), *ramādī*.

Greek, *rúmī*.

green, *áhḏar*, fem. *háḏra*, pl. *ḥuḏr*.

greet, *sállim*, *yis*.

greeting, *salám*, pl. -*āt*.

grind, *ṭáḥan*, *a*.

grow (plants), *nábat*, *u* ; (men and animals), *kíbir*, *i*.

guest, *ḏéf*, pl. *ḏiyáf*.

gun, *bunduqīye*, pl. -*āt*.

## H.

hail, *bárad*.

hair, *ša'r* ; one hair, *šá're*, pl. *šú'úr*.

half, *nuṣṣ*.

half-moon, *hilál*.

ham, *gambún* (cf. French *jambon*).

hand, *íd*, pl. *ayádī*.

handwriting, *ḥatṭ*, pl. *ḥuṭúṭ*.

hang, 'állaq, *yi*'.

happen, *gárā*, *yígrī*.

harbour, *mína*, pl. *miyen* or *minát*.

hare, *árnāb*, pl. *arānīb*.

harem, *ḥarīm*.

harvest (crop), *ḥáṣad*.

harvest (season), *máusim*.

hashish, *ḥašīš*.

hashish-smoker, *ḥaššāš*, pl. -*ín*.

haste, 'agel.

hat, *burnēṭa*, pl. *barānīṭ*.

hatchet, *bálṭa*, pl. *bulāt*.

have (possess) = *líye*, *lak*, *loh*, &c.

have (upon one) = 'andī, 'ándak, &c.

head, *rās*, pl. *ru'ús*.

heal (intrans.), *ṭāb*, *i* ; (trans.),

*šáfā*, *yíṣfī*.

healing, *šifā*.

health, *šihhe* ; 'aṣīye.

healthy, *sálīm*, pl. -*ín*.

hear, *sími'*, *a*.

heart, *qalb*, pl. *qulúb*.

heart, by, 'ala 'lḡá'ib.

heat, *ḥarr*.

heaven, *sámā*, pl. *samāwāt*.

heavy, *taqíl*, pl. *tuqál*.

heel, *ka'b*, pl. *ku'áb*.

hell, *gehánnam*.

hemp (prepared for smoking),  
*ḥašīš*.

hen, *fárḥa*, pl. *firáḥ*.

herbs, *ḥašīš*.

here, *héne*.

hesitate, *itwáqqaf*, *yil*.

hide, *istahábba*, *yist*. ; *háfa*, *yíḥfī*.

hideous, *šānī'*, pl. *šúna'a*.

high, 'ālī, pl. -*yín*.

hill, *táll*, pl. *tilál*.



hire, *kíra* ; *úgra*.  
 hire, *istá'gar*, *yist.* ; *kárā*, *yíkrī*.  
 history, *tārīḥ*.  
 hit, *ḍárab*, *a*.  
 hither, *lihéne*.  
 hoarse, *mabḥūḥ*.  
 hold, *mísik*, *i*.  
 home, *wáṭan*, pl. *auṭán*.  
 honest, *amín*, pl. *umána*.  
 honey, *'asal*.  
 honour, *šáraf*.  
 horn, *qarn*, pl. *qurún*.  
 horse, *ḥuṣán*, pl. *aḥšíne* or *ḥél* ;  
     mare, *fáras*, pl. *afrás*.  
 hospital, *'isbitáliya*.  
 host, *ṣáhib elbét*.  
 hot, *suhṇ*.  
 hotel, *lukánda*, pl. *-át*.  
 hour, *sá'a*, pl. *-át*.  
 house, *bét*, pl. *bīyút*.  
 how? *ezáy?*  
 however, *lákin* ; *'ammā* ; *ma'a*  
     *zálík*.  
 human, *insánī*.  
 hunger, *gú'*.  
 hungry, *ḡi'án* (*gu'án*), pl. *-ín*.  
 hungry, be, *ḡá'*, *ú'*.  
 hunt, *iṣṭád*, *yīṣ*.  
 hurry, *istá'gil*, *yist*.  
 hurt, *wáḡa'*, *yúḡa'*.  
 hut, *ḥuṣṣ*, pl. *aḥṣāṣ*.

# I.

ice, *gelíd* ; *tālg*.  
 ichneumon, *nims*, pl. *numús*.  
 idea, *fíkr*, pl. *afkar*.

idle, *kaslán*, pl. *kasálā* ; *tānbāl*.  
 if, *íza* ; *lau* ; *in*.  
 ill, *'aiyán*, pl. *-ín* ; *mārīḍ*, pl.  
     *mārḍā*.  
 illness, *'áiya* ; *máraḍ*.  
 imagine, *iṣṣáuwwar*, *yīṣṣ*.  
 immediately, *dilwáqt*.  
 impossible, *muḥál* ; *muṣ múmkin*.  
 improbable, *bé'íd*.  
 improbable, consider, *istáb'id*.  
 in, *fí*.  
 incredulity, *kufr*.  
 India, *bilád elhind*.  
 Indian, *híndī* ; collectively, *hind*.  
 indigestion, *túḥme*.  
 inform, *áḥbar*, *yíḥbir*.  
 in front of, *quddám*.  
 inhabit, *sákan*, *u*.  
 inhabitant, *sákin*, pl. *sukkán*.  
 ink, *ḥebr*.  
 in particular, *'ala 'lḥuṣúṣ*.  
 inquire after, *istáḥbar*, *yist*. *'an*.  
 inscription, *kitábe*, pl. *-át*.  
 insects, *ḥašarát*.  
 inside, *gú'wa* ; *dāḥil*.  
 insolent, be, *iṭṭáwil*, *yīṭṭ*. (to =  
     *'ala*).  
 instant, *lāḥza*.  
 instead of, *bíḍál*.  
 instruction, *ta'lím*, pl. *-át*.  
 intellect, *'aql*.  
 intention, *nīye*, pl. *nīyát*.  
 interest (advantage), *naṣ'*.  
 interpreter, *targumán*, pl. *tarā-*  
     *ḡimín*.  
 in vain, *balaṣ*.

invent, *iḥtáraʿ*, *yihṭáriʿ*.  
 iron, *ḥadíd*.  
 irresolute, be, *itwáqqaf*, *yit*.  
 irrigate, *sáqa*, *yísqī*.  
 Islamism, *islám*.  
 island, *güzíra*, pl. *güzáʿir*.  
 Italian, *italyáni*, pl. *-ín*.  
 Italy, *iṭáliya*.  
 ivory, *sinn elfíl*.

## J.

jacket, *zaketta*; (waistcoat), *ṣu-  
déri*; (ladies), *antári*.  
 January, *yanáʿir* (*kānūn ettānī*).  
 Jerusalem, *elquds*.  
 Jew, Jewish, *yahūdī*.  
 Joseph, *yúsef*.  
 journey, *sáfar*, pl. *asfár*; *máṣy*.  
 judge, *qāḍī*, pl. *quḍáh*.  
 judgement, *ḥukm*, pl. *aḥkám*.  
 jug, *ibríq* (*abríq*), pl. *abáríq*.  
 July, *yúliyo* (*tämmúz*).  
 jump, *naṭṭ*, *u*.  
 June, *yúnio* (*ḥazírán*).  
 justice, *ʿadl*, *inṣáf*.

## K.

keep, *ḥáfaz*, *a*.  
 keep one's promise, *wáfa*, *yúfi*.  
 kettle, *ḥállā*, pl. *ḥállāl*.  
 key, *muftáḥ*, pl. *mafátiḥ*.  
 kill, *máuwat*, *yim*.  
 king, *málik*, pl. *mulúk*.  
 kiss, *bása*; collectively, *bús*.  
 kiss, *bás*, *ú*.  
 kitchen, *maṭbaḥ*, pl. *maṭábih*.

knee, *rúkke*, pl. *rúkab*.  
 knife, *sikkíne*, pl. *sekākín*.  
 knock, *daqq*, *u*; *ḥábaṭ*, *a*.  
 know, *ʿirif*, *a*.  
 knowledge, *ʿilm*; *maʿrifä*, pl.  
*maʿárif*.  
 known, *maʿlúm*.  
 Koran, *elqorán*.

## L.

ladder, *séllim*, pl. *selálim*.  
 lady, *sitt*, pl. *-át*.  
 lake, *beḥéra*, pl. *-át*; *bírka*, pl.  
*birák*.  
 lamb, *ḥīrúf*, pl. *ḥawārif*.  
 lame, *aʿrag*; *mekássah*.  
 lamp, *lámba*.  
 land, *arḍ*.  
 land (disembark), *ṭlí*, *a* *ʿalbárr*.  
 landlord, *lokandágī*, pl. *-íye*;  
*ṣaḥib elbét*.  
 lane, *ḥáre*, pl. *-át*.  
 language, *lisán*, pl. *alsíne*; *lúga*.  
 large, *kebír*, pl. *kubár*.  
 last, *áḥir*; the last time, *áḥir  
márra*.  
 last year, *ʿamenáuwal*.  
 late, *wáḥrī*.  
 lately, *ʿan qarīb*.  
 later, *báʿden*.  
 laugh, *álíḥik*, *i* (at = *ʿala*).  
 law, *qānūn*, pl. *qawānín*.  
 law-suit, *dáʿwa*, pl. *daʿáwī*.  
 laziness, *kásal*; *tämbäla*.  
 lazy, *kaslán*, pl. *kasálī*; *tänbäl*.  
 lead (metal), *ruṣāṣ*.

leaf, *wáraqa*, pl. 'auráq.  
 lean, *nahíf*, pl. *núhafa*.  
 learn, *i'állam*, *yif*.  
 learned-man, 'álim, pl. 'úlama.  
 leather, *gild*, pl. *gulúd*.  
 leave, take leave of, *wádda*, *yiw*.  
 left (hand), *šimál*.  
 lemon, *limún*.  
 lend, *áqraḍ*, *yíqriḍ*.  
 length, *ṭúl*.  
 lesson, *därs*, pl. *durús*.  
 letter, *kítáb*, pl. *kútub*; *gawáb*,  
 pl. *gawābāt*.  
 letter (of the alphabet), *ḥarf*,  
 pl. *ḥurúf*.  
 library, *kutubḥáne*.  
 lie (tell lies), *kídib*, *i*; *káddab*.  
 lie (rest), *ráqad*, *u*; omitted in  
 the case of things: e.g. the  
 book lies on the table, *elkitáb*  
 'ala 'ṭṭarabéze.  
 life, 'omr; *ḥáyā* (*ḥayát*).  
 lift, *ráfa*, *a*.  
 light (subs.), *núr*, pl. *anwár*.  
 light (adj.), *ḥafíf*, pl. *ḥifáf*.  
 light (vb.), *wállā*, *yiw*.  
 lightning, *barq*, pl. *burúq*.  
 like, *zay*.  
 lime, *gír*.  
 line, *ḥaṭṭ*, pl. *ḥuṭúṭ*.  
 linen, *kittán*.  
 lion, *ásad*, pl. *usúd*; *saḅ'a*, pl.  
*subū'a*.  
 lip, *šiffe*, pl. *šafá'if*.  
 little, *qalíl* (*qúláiyil*).  
 little, a, *šūwáiyē*.

live, 'áṣ, *i*.  
 living, *aḥi*, pl. 'áḥyā.  
 lizard, *ḍabb*, pl. *ḍibāb*.  
 load, *ḥámmul*, *yih*.  
 loaf (bread), *ragíf*, pl. *argífē*.  
 loathing, *qáraf*.  
 lobster, *abū galámbo*.  
 lock, *kālún*, pl. *kawālín*.  
 lock, *sakk*, *u*.  
 locust, *garáde*; collectively,  
*garád*.  
 long, *ṭawíl*, pl. *ṭuwál*.  
 long ago, *min zamán*.  
 look, *šáf*, *ú*; *baṣṣ*, *u*; *názar*, *u*.  
 loosen, *fakk*, *u*; *ḥall*, *i*.  
 lord, *rabb*. Our Lord, *rabbúnä*.  
 lose, *ḍáiya*, *yid*.  
 loudly, *biṭ'ālī*.  
 love, *maḥábbe*.  
 love, *ḥabb*, *i*.  
 loved, in love, 'áṣiq, pl. -ín  
 ('uššáq); *maḥbúb*.  
 lover, *ḥabīb*.  
 lower than, *taḥt 'an*.  
 luggage, 'afš.  
 lunatic asylum, *māristán*, pl. -át.  
 lungs, *fīšša*.

## M.

machine, *mákina*, pl. -át.  
 magazine, *máḥẓän*, pl. *maḥázín*.  
 Mahometan (subs.), *múslim*, pl.  
 -ín.  
 Mahometan (adj.), *islámī*.  
 maid, *ḥaddáme*, pl. -át.  
 maiden, *bint*, pl. *banát*.

mainland, *barr*.  
 maize, *dúrra*.  
 make, *fá'al*, *a*; 'imil, *i*.  
 man, *rágil*, pl. *rigál*.  
 manager, *názir*.  
 mankind, *insán*, pl. *nás*.  
 map, *hárṭa*.  
 March (month), *mars* (*adár*).  
 market, *súq*, pl. *aswáq*; *bazár*,  
 pl. -*át*.  
 Marocco, *marákiš*.  
 marriage, *gawáz*.  
 married, *mitgáuwiz*.  
 marry, *ilgáuwiz*, *yitg*.  
 Mary, *máryam*.  
 mast, *šárī*, pl. *šawārī*.  
 master, *sīd*, pl. *īsyād*; -workman,  
*ústa*, pl. *ustawát*.  
 master (of a house), *šāḥib elbét*.  
 mat, *hašīre*, pl. *hušr*.  
 mat-weaver, *hušari*.  
 matches, *kibrít*.  
 matter, it does not, *mā'alēš*.  
 May (month), *máyo* (*īyār*).  
 meadow, *marg*, pl. *murúg*.  
 meal, *akl*, pl. *mākūlāt*; *ákle*, pl.  
*akalát*.  
 mean (signify), 'ana, *ya'nī*.  
 means, it, *ya'nī*; *mā'nāh*.  
 meat, *laḥm*, pl. *luḥúm*.  
 Mecca, *mekka*.  
 medicine, *dáwā*, pl. *adwíye*.  
 Medina, *medīnā*.  
 Mediterranean Sea, *elbaḥr el'áb-  
 jad*.  
 meet, *qábil*, *yiqábil*.

melon, *baṭṭiḥe*; *šammáme*.  
 merchant, *tágir*, pl. *tuggár*.  
 merit, *istaháqq*, *yist*.  
 metal, *má'dan*, pl. *ma'ádin*.  
 meter (mètre), *metr*, pl. *amtár*.  
 midday, *ḍuhr*.  
 midday-meal, *gádā*, *gádwe*.  
 middle, *wasṭ*.  
 middle, in the, *fī wasṭ*.  
 midnight, *nuṣṣ ellél*.  
 milk, *lában*; *ḥalīb*.  
 mill, *ṭāḥúne*, pl. *ṭawāḥín*.  
 miller, *ṭaḥḥán*, pl. -*ín*.  
 minaret, *mádne*, pl. *ma'ádin*.  
 mind, *ḥáṭir*. Nevermind, *mā'alēš*.  
 Mind! *ḥásib*!  
 minute, *daqíqa*, pl. *daqā'iq*.  
 mirror, *mir'áye*, pl. *maráyyā*.  
 miserable, *maskín*, pl. *masākín*.  
 misfortune, *mušíbe*, pl. *mašā'ib*.  
 mistake, *gálṭa*, pl. *galaṭát*.  
 mister, *šāḥib*, pl. *aṣḥáb*. Sir!  
 (to Europeans), *yā ḥawága*;  
 (to natives), *yā sídī*.  
 mix, *ḥálaṭ*, *u*.  
 mockery, *mashára*.  
 modesty, *ḥáyā*.  
 moisture, *ruṭúbe*.  
 moment, *lāḥze*.  
 Monday, *yóm el'etnén*.  
 money, *fulús*.  
 monkey, *qird*, pl. *qurúd*.  
 month, *šahr*, pl. *šuhúr* (*ušhúr*).  
 monthly-pay, *māḥiya*.  
 moon, *qámar*.  
 more, *áktar*; *ziyáde*; *kámán*.

morning, *ṣubḥ*; *ṣabāḥ*.  
 mosque, *ḡāmiʿ*, pl. *ḡawāmiʿ*;  
*māsḡid*, pl. *masāḡid*; *zāwīye*,  
 pl. *zawāyā*.  
 mosquito, *nāmūse*, pl. -*āt*.  
 most, at the, *bil āktar*.  
 mostly, *biḥ'āḡlab*.  
 mother, 'umm, pl. 'ummāhāt.  
 mountain, *ḡābāl*, pl. *ḡibāl*.  
 mouse, *fāra*, pl. *fīrān*.  
 moustache, *ṣawārīb*; *ṣānāb*.  
 mouth, *ḥānak*, pl. *aḥnīke*; *fūm*.  
 much, *ketīr*.  
 mule, *bāḡle*, pl. *iḡḡāl*.  
 murder, *qatl*.  
 murder, *qátal*, *u*.  
 murderer, *qātīl*, pl. *quttāl*.  
 music, *mazīka*.  
 must (auxiliary verb) = *lāzim*.

## N.

nail (*clou*), *musmār*, pl. *māsāmīr*.  
 nail (*ongle*), *ḡufr*, pl. *ḡawāfir*.  
 nail (verb), *māsmar*, *yim*.  
 naked, 'arān, pl. 'arāyā.  
 name, 'ism, pl. āsāmī.  
 namely, *yā'nī*.  
 napkin, *fūṭa*, pl. *fūwaṭ*.  
 nargileh (water-pipe), *nargīle*  
 (*ṣīṣa*).  
 narrow, *ḡāyīq*.  
 native, *ibn elbālād*; *ahl elbālād*.  
 native (adj.), *bālādī*.  
 nature, *ṭabī'a*.  
 near, *qarīb*, pl. *aqrība* (to = *min*).

necessary, *lāzim*, pl. -*īn*.  
 neck, *rāqabe*, pl. *riqāb*.  
 need, *iḥtiyāḡ*, pl. -*āt*.  
 need, 'āz, *yē'ūz*.  
 negro, *īswid*, pl. *sūdān*.  
 neighbour, *ḡār*, pl. *ḡīrān*.  
 neither . . . nor, *lā' . . . wēlā'*.  
 nephew, 'ibn (pl. *bānī*) *el'āḥ*;  
*ibn el'ūḥt*.  
 net (fishing-), *ṣābakā*, pl. -*āt*.  
 new, *ḡedīd*, pl. *ḡudād*.  
 new-moon, *ḥilāl*.  
 newspaper, *ḡurnāl*, pl. -*āt* (or  
*ḡarānīl*).  
 niece, *bint* (pl. *banāt*) *el'āḥ*; *bint*  
*el'ūḥt*.  
 nigger, *īswid*, pl. *sūd* or *sūdān*.  
 night, *lēl*, *lēle*, pl. *liyāl*.  
 nightingale, *búlbul*, pl. *balābīl*.  
 Nile, *baḥr ennīl*; White Nile,  
*baḥr el'ābyad*; Blue Nile,  
*baḥr el'āzraq*.  
 no, *lā'*.  
 noise, *kārkābe*.  
 none, *mā -š*. I have no money,  
*mā'āndīš fulūs*.  
 north, *šimāl*.  
 northern, *šimālī*.  
 nose, *minḥār*, pl. *manāḥīr*; *anf*.  
 not, *mā*; *lā'*.  
 nothing, *mā -še*.  
 November, *nofémber* (*tišrīn*  
*ettānī*).  
 now, *dilwāḡt*. From now on,  
*dilwāḡte werā' ih*.  
 Nubia, *bilād elbarābra*.

Nubian, *barbārī*, pl. *barābra*.  
 number, 'ādād, pl. *a'dād*; *nīmra*.

## O.

oak, *šāgaret elballūt*.  
 oar, *muqdāf*, pl. *maqādīf*.  
 oasis, *wāḥa*, pl. -āt.  
 oath, *yemīn*, pl. *aymān*.  
 obey, *ṭāwī*, *yīṭ*.  
 obligation, *mamnūniya*.  
 occupy oneself, *ištāgal*, *yīštāgil*.  
 October, *oktōber* (*tišrīn el'āuwal*).  
 office, *máktab*, pl. *mākātīb*;  
*diwān*.  
 official, *ma'mūr*, pl. -īn.  
 often, *ketīr*.  
 oh! *yā!*  
 oil, *zēt*.  
 old (things), *qadīm*, pl. *qudm*;  
 (persons), *kebīr*.  
 old man, 'agūz; *iḥtiyār*, pl. -īye.  
 old woman, 'agūza, pl. 'agā'iz.  
 olive, *zētūne*; collectively, *zētūn*.  
 on account of, *bīsābab*.  
 one, *wāḥid*.  
 one-eyed, *ā'war*, fem. 'āurā, pl.  
 'ūr.  
 onion, *bašāle*; collectively, *bāšal*.  
 only, *bess*.  
 open (adj.), *maftūḥ*.  
 open, *fātaḥ*, *a*.  
 opinion, *rā'ī*; *fīkr*.  
 opposite, *quṣṣād*.  
 or, *wālla*; *au*.  
 order, 'āmar, *yū'mur*; *wāṣṣā*,  
*yīwāṣṣī*.

Orient, *elmāšriq*.  
 Oriental, *šārqī*.  
 origin, *aṣl*, pl. *uṣūl*.  
 ostrich, *na'āme*; collectively,  
*na'am*.  
 other, *āḥar*, fem. *ūhra*, pl. *ūḥar*;  
*ḡér*; *tānī*, fem. *tānya*.  
 ought, expressed by, *lāzim*.  
 out, *barrā*.  
 outer, *barrānī*.  
 outside, *barrā*; *ḥārig*.  
 over, 'ala; *fōq*; the upper,  
*elfōqānī*.  
 overcome, *ḡīlib*, *i*.  
 overseer, *nāzir*, pl. *nuzzār*.  
 ox, *tōr*, pl. *fīrān*.

## P.

pack up, *ḥāzam*, *i*.  
 packet, *rūzma*, pl. *rūzam*.  
 pain, *ālam*, pl. *ālām*; *wagā'*.  
 paint, *būya*.  
 paint (artist), *šāuwar*, *yīṣ*.;  
 (house), *ḍārab būya fī*.  
 painter (artist), *mūṣauwerātī*, pl.  
 -īye.  
 pair, *gōze*, pl. *agwāz*.  
 palace, *qaṣr*, pl. *quṣūr*; *serāye*,  
 pl. -āt or *serāyā*.  
 palm-tree, *nāḥle*; collectively,  
*naḥl*.  
 paper, *wāraq*; a sheet of paper,  
*wāraqe*, pl. *aurāq*.  
 para (coin), *fāḍḍa* (no plural).  
 paralytic, *maflūg*.  
 pardon, *sāmiḥ*, *yīs*.

- parents, *wālidén*.  
 part, *qism*, pl. *aqsám*.  
 Pasha, *bāšā*, pl. *bāšawāt*.  
 pass by, *fál*, *ú*.  
 pass the night, *bát*, *í*.  
 past, *mādī*.  
 pastry, *faṭír*.  
 patience, *ṣabr*.  
 pay, *'úgra*, pl. *'úgar*.  
 pay, *dáfa'*, *a*.  
 pear, *kumétrā*.  
 pearl, *lúlū*, pl. *lúli*; *durr*, pl. *-át*.  
 peas, *bisélla*.  
 peasant, *felláḥ*, pl. *-ín*.  
 pen, *rīšet kitābe*; *qalam*.  
 pencil, *qalam* (pl. *aqlám*) *ruṣāṣ*.  
 people, *nās*; *bānī ádam*; (nation), *š'a'b*, pl. *šu'úb*.  
 pepper, *fīlfil*.  
 perhaps, *bálki*; *rúbbamā*; *yímkin*.  
 permission, *'izn*; *'agázä*.  
 Persia, *bilād e'ágam*.  
 Persian, *'ágamī*.  
 person, *šaḥṣ*, pl. *ašḥāṣ*.  
 petroleum, *gáz* (*gáz*).  
 philosopher, *fēlasúf*, pl. *felásfa*.  
 piaster (2½d.), *qirš*, pl. *qurúš*.  
 picture, *ṣúra*, pl. *šúwar*.  
 pig, *ḥanzír*, pl. *ḥanāzír*.  
 pigeon, *ḥamāme*.  
 pipe, *'úd*, pl. *'idán*; (smoking), *bíba*. See Nargileh.  
 pitch, *zift*.  
 pitcher, *zír*.  
 pity, *ḥánnin*, *yih* ('ala).  
 place, *máṭraḥ*, pl. *maṭáriḥ*; *maḥáll*, pl. *-át*.  
 place, *ḥaṭṭ*, *o*.  
 plain, be, *bán*, *a*; *záhar*, *a*.  
 plant, *nabát*, pl. *-át*.  
 plate, *ṣaḥn*, pl. *ṣuḥún*; *ṭabaq*, pl. *'aṭbāq*.  
 please, *á'gab*, *yé'gib*.  
 please! *é'milma'rúf*; *min fáḍlak*.  
 pleasant, *laṭíf*, pl. *luṭáf*.  
 pleased, *mabsút*.  
 pleasure, *imbisát*.  
 plum, *barqúqa*.  
 plump, *semín*.  
 pocket, *gēb*, pl. *giyúb*.  
 pocket-handkerchief, *mendíl*, pl. *mānādíl*.  
 pocket-knife, *máṭwa*, pl. *maṭáwī*.  
 poem, *š'ir*, pl. *aš'ár*.  
 poet, *š'a'ir*, pl. *šú'arā*.  
 poetry, *š'ir*.  
 pointed, *mūráuwas*.  
 poison, *sim*.  
 police, *bulīš*.  
 politics, *siyāse*.  
 pond, *bírke*, pl. *bírak*.  
 poor, *faqír*, pl. *fúqarā*.  
 port (harbour), *mína*.  
 porter, *šaiyál*; hall-porter, *bauwáb*, pl. *-ín*.  
 possessor, *šāḥib*, pl. *ašḥáb*.  
 possible, *múmkín*.  
 possible, be, *ámkan*, *yímkin*.  
 possibility, *imkán*.  
 post, *búsṭa*; *bósṭa*.  
 pot, *šálya*, pl. *šawālī*.



potatoes, *baṭāṭis*.  
 pour, *ṣabb*, *yeṣṣabb*.  
 pour out, *kabb*, *u*.  
 poverty, *faqr*.  
 powerful, *qāwī*, pl. *aqwīye*.  
 praise, *ḥamd*. Praise God!  
*elḥāmdu lillāh*.  
 pray, *ṣallā*, *yīṣallī*.  
 prayer, *dū'ā*, pl. *ad'īye*; *ṣalāt*.  
 present (subs.), *hedīye*, pl. *hedāyā*.  
 present (adj.), *ḥaḍīr*, pl. *-īn*.  
 pretty, *zarīf*, pl. *zūrafa*; *kū-wāiyis*.  
 prevent, *māna'*, *a* (from = 'an).  
 price, *tāman*, pl. *atmān*.  
 pride, *kībrīyā*.  
 prince, *brīns*; 'āmīr, pl. 'ūmara.  
 print, *ṭāba'*, *a*.  
 prison, *ḥabshāne*; *sign*.  
 probably, *bā'in*; *gālīban*.  
 proclamation, *i'lān*, pl. *-āt*.  
 profession, *ṣān'a*, pl. *ṣanā'i'*.  
 progress, *taqāddam*.  
 project (subs.), *mašrū'*.  
 promise, *wā'ad*, *yū'id*.  
 prophet, *nābī*, pl. *anbīye*.  
 prosperous, *sa'id*, pl. *sū'ada*.  
 proverb, *māsal*, pl. *amsāl*.  
 Prussia, *bērūsya*.  
 Prussian, *bērūsīānī*; *bērūsīāwī*.  
 pulse, *nabḍ*.  
 punishment, *gāzā*.  
 pupil, *tālmīz*, pl. *tālmāze*.  
 pure, *ṣāfī*.  
 purse, *kīs*, pl. *ākīyās*.  
 put, *ḥaṭṭ*, *o*.

put on (clothes), *lībīs*, *i*.  
 put out (extinguish), *ṭaffa*, *i*.  
 put up with, *ṣābar*, *u*.  
 pyramid, *ḥāram*, pl. *ahrām*.

## Q.

quality, *ṣīfe*, pl. *ṣifāt*.  
 quantity, *miqdār*, pl. *maqādīr*;  
 (= much), *kútre*.  
 quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ), *rub'*.  
 quarter (of a town), *ḥāra*, pl. *-āt*.  
 quarters (dwelling), *mānzil*, pl.  
*manāzil*.  
 queen, *mālikā*.  
 question, *su'āl*, pl. *a'sīle*.

## R.

rags, *kūhnā*.  
 railway, *sīkket* (pl. *sikak*) *elḥadīd*.  
 rain, *nāṭar* (*māṭar*), pl. *amṭār*.  
 rain, *nāṭar*, *u*.  
 raise, *rāfa'*, *a*.  
 raven, *gurāb*, pl. *aḡrībe*.  
 read, *qārā*, *yīqrā*.  
 ready, *ḥaḍīr*, pl. *-īn*.  
 ready, be, *ḥūllus*, *a*.  
 ready, make, *ḥallaṣ*, *yih*.  
 real, *ḥaqīqī*, pl. *-iyīn*.  
 reason, 'aql.  
 reasonable, 'aql, pl. 'ūgala.  
 receipt, *waṣl*, pl. *wāṣūl*.  
 receive, *āḥad*, *yāḥod*; *qābaḍ*, *a*.  
 recently, 'an *qarīb*.  
 reception, *istiqbāl*.  
 reckon, *ḥāsab*, *i*; *ḥīsīb*, *i*.  
 recommend, *wāṣṣā*, *yiwāṣṣī*.

- recover (from illness), *ṣīḥ*, *yīṣḥā*.  
 red, *āḥmar*, fem. *ḥámra*, pl. *ḥumr*.  
 reflect, *iflákár*, *yiflíkir*.  
 refuse, *rásaf*, *u*.  
 rein (bridle), *sér*, pl. *siyár*.  
 rejoice, *firiḥ*, *a*; *inbásaṭ*, *yinbásiṭ*.  
 relate, *ḥákā*, *yíḥkī*.  
 relation, *qarīb*, pl. *qarā'ib*.  
 remain, *fīdīl*, *a*.  
 remaining, *bāqī*, pl. *-iyīn*.  
 remember, *iflákár*, *yiflíkir*.  
 renew, *gēddid*, *yig*.  
 repair, *šallāḥ*, *yīṣ*.  
 repeat *kárrar*, *yikárrir*.  
 report, *ḥábar*, pl. *aḥbár*; the report runs, *yušá'*.  
 request, *rágā*.  
 rest (remains), *baqíye*; (ease, *rāḥa*.)  
 rest, *irtáḥ*, *yirtáḥ*; *istaráiyah*, *yist*.  
 restrain, *mána'*, *a* (from = 'an).  
 retard, *āḥḥar*, *yī'*.  
 return (bring back), *rágga'*, *yir*.  
 return (come back), *rígi'*, *a*.  
 rib, *ḍiṭ'*, pl. *ḍulú'*.  
 rice, *ruzz*.  
 rich, *gánī*, pl. *aḡnīye*.  
 ride, *ríkīb*, *a*.  
 right, I am, 'ándī *elḥaqq*; *elḥáqq fī'ídī*.  
 right (hand), *yemín*.  
 right, to the, 'alyemín.  
 rind, *qīšr*, pl. *qušúr*.  
 ring, *ḥalaqa*, pl. *ḥulqán*; (signet), *ḥátim*, pl. *ḥawátim*.  
 ring the bell, *ḍárab elgáras*.  
 ripen, *istáwā*, *yistáwī*.  
 rise (sun-), *ṭulú'* (*eššāms*).  
 rise, *ṭil'*, *a*.  
 river, *nahr*, pl. *anhár*; *baḥr*.  
 roast, *šáwā*, *yīšwī*.  
 roasted, *mášwī*.  
 rob, *náhab*, *a*.  
 robber, *ḥarāmī*, pl. *-íye*.  
 Rome, *róma*.  
 roof (flat), *saṭḥ*, pl. *suṭúḥ*.  
 rope, *ḥābl*, pl. *ḥibál*.  
 rose, *wárde*; collectively, *ward*.  
 Rosetta, *rašíd*.  
 rotten, *mé'affīn*.  
 rough, *ḥīšīn*.  
 round (adj.), *mēdāurwar*.  
 round (prep.), *ḥawalén*.  
 rule (dominion), *ḥukm*; *mulk*.  
 rule (instrument), *masṭára*, pl. *masátir*.  
 ruler (sovereign), *mélik*; *sultán*.  
 run, *gārā*, *yígrī*.  
 Russia, *bilád elmoskúf*.  
 Russian, *moskúfī*; collectively, *moskúf*.

## S.

- sabre, *séf*, pl. *sīyáf*.  
 sack, *kīs*, pl. *ākýás*.  
 sad, *maḥzún*.  
 saddle, *sarg*, pl. *surúg*; (donkey's), *barda'a*, pl. *barádi'*.  
 saddle-animal, *rukúbe*, pl. *raká'ib*.

- saddler, *surúgī*, pl. *īye*.  
 safe, *emīn*, pl. *ūmanā*.  
 saffron, *za'farān*.  
 sailing-vessel, *márkiḅ* (*marákīḅ* ;  
*qilā'ī*).  
 salad, *sálaḷa*.  
 salary, *'úgra*, pl. *'úgar*.  
 sale, *bē*.  
 salt, *milḥ*.  
 salute, *sāllim*, *yis*. (*'ala*).  
 sand, *raml*.  
 sandal, *na'l*, pl. *n'al*.  
 satiate, *šibi*.  
 satiated, *šaḇ'án*, pl. *-ín*.  
 satisfy, *káfā*, *yikfī*.  
 Saturday, *yóm essábt*.  
 save, *wáffar*, *yiw*.  
 say, *qál*, *ú*.  
 scent, *rīḥa*.  
 scholar, *tālmūz*, pl. *tālmāze*.  
 school, *kuttāb*, pl. *katātīb* ;  
 (higher), *medrése*, pl. *maddáris*.  
 schoolmaster, *ḥōga*.  
 scissors, *maqáṣṣ*, pl. *-át*.  
 scribe, *kātīb*, pl. *kātabā*.  
 sea, *baḥr*, pl. *biḥár*.  
 search, *fáttiṣ*, *yif*. ; *dáuwār* (for  
 = *'ala*).  
 sea-shore, *sāḥil*, pl. *sawāḥil*.  
 season, *faṣl*, pl. *fuṣūl*.  
 seat, *kúrsī*, pl. *kārāsī*.  
 see, *šáf*, *ú* ; *baṣṣ*, *u* ; *názar*, *u*.  
 self, *nafs* ; myself, *náfsī*, &c.  
 send, *ársal*, *yírsil* ; *bá'at*, *a*.  
 September, *sebtémber* (*'elúl*).  
 servant, *ḥaddám*, pl. *ḥuddám*.  
 servant (female), *ḥaddáme*, pl.  
*ḥaddámāt*.  
 serve, *ḥádam*, *i*.  
 service, *ḥídme*, pl. *ḥídam*.  
 several, *kám*.  
 sew, *ḥáiyat*, *yih*.  
 shade, *zill*.  
 shame, *'ēb*.  
 shape, *šikl*, pl. *aškál*.  
 sharp, *ḥámī*.  
 shawl, *šál*, pl. *-át*.  
 sheep, *gáname* ; collectively,  
*gánam*.  
 sheikh, *šēḥ*.  
 sherbet, *šarbát*.  
 shibuk (pipe), *šibúk*.  
 ship, *márkiḅ*, pl. *marákīḅ*.  
 shirt, *qamīṣ*, pl. *qumṣán*.  
 shoe (Oriental), *markúb*, pl.  
*marákīḅ* ; (European), *gāzmā* ;  
*qundúra*, pl. *qanádīr*.  
 shop, *dukkán*, pl. *dakākín*.  
 shore, *sāḥil*, pl. *sawāḥil*.  
 short, *quṣáiyar* (*qaṣír*), pl. *quṣár*.  
 shoulder, *kif*, pl. *aktáf*.  
 show, *'arad*, *i* ; *wárrā*, *yiwárrī*  
 (with two accusatives) ; *fárrag*  
*'ala*.  
 shrub, *šūgéra*, pl. *-át*.  
 shut, *qáfal*, *i*.  
 shutter, *šāmsīye*, pl. *šamāsī*.  
 side, *gamb*, pl. *agnáb* ; *ṭaraf*,  
 pl. *aṭráf*.  
 side, on the other, *fiṭṭárafel' dḥar*.  
 silence, *sukút*.  
 silent, be, *súkut*, *u*.

- silk, *ḥarīr* ; (raw), *qazz*.  
 silken, *min ḥarīr*.  
 silver, *fāḍḍa*.  
 similar, *mūšābih* ; *āšbah* (*bi*).  
 simple (easy), *ḥāyīn*.  
 sin, *ḥaṭīye*, pl. *ḥaṭāyā*.  
 since, *min* ; *min wāqtoḥ*.  
 since a long time, *min zamān*.  
 sing, *ḡānnā*, *yigānnī*.  
 singer (female), *ālme*, pl. *awālim*.  
 sister, *uḥt*, pl. *aḥawāt*.  
 sister-in-law, *sīlfe*, pl. *salā'if*.  
 sit, *qā'ad*, *o*.  
 size, *kubr*.  
 skilled, *šāṭir*, pl. *šuttār*.  
 skin, *gild*, pl. *gulūd*.  
 slack, *merāḥraḥ*.  
 slack, be, *itrāḥā*.  
 slave (masc.), *ʿabd*, pl. *ʿabīd*.  
 slave (girl), *ʿabde*, pl. *-āt*.  
 sleep, *noḥm*.  
 sleep, *nām*, *ā*.  
 sleepy, *na'sān*, pl. *-īn*.  
 slender, *qūldīyīl* ; *raqīq*, pl. *ruqāq*.  
 slowly, *bišwēš*.  
 small, *zūḡāyīar*, pl. *zuḡār* or *-īn*.  
 smile, *itbāssam*, *yitb*.  
 smith, *ḥaddād*, pl. *-īn*.  
 smoke (tobacco), *šīrib*, *a edduḥān*.  
 snake, *ḥāiye*, pl. *ḥayāyā* ; *tībān*,  
     pl. *ta'ābīn*.  
 snow, *tālg*, pl. *tulūg*.  
 snow (verb), *nīzil* (*i*) *ettālg*.  
 so much, *kīdā*.  
 sofa, *dīwān*, pl. *dāwāwīn*.  
 soft, *lāiyīn*.  
 soil, *arḍ* ; *turāb*.  
 soldier, *ʿaskārī*, pl. *ʿasākīr* ; col-  
     lectively, *ʿaskar*.  
 somebody, *wāḥid* ; *ḥāddi*.  
 something, *šē* ; *ḥāga*.  
 son, *ʿibn*, pl. *bānī* ; *wālad*, pl.  
     *ūlād*.  
 song, *mūwāl*, pl. *mauwāwīl* ; *ḡūna*.  
 soon, *ʿan qarīb* ; *ba'de šwāiye*.  
 sort, *ḡins*, pl. *ignās*.  
 soul, *nafs*, pl. *nufūs* (*unfūs*).  
 soup, *šōrba*.  
 sour, *ḥāmiḍ*.  
 south, *gunūb* ; *qīblī*.  
 speak, *itkāllim*, *yitk*.  
 special, *maḥṣūs*.  
 speech, *kalām*. What is being  
     spoken about ? *elkalām ʿala ē* ?  
 spend (money), *šāraf*, *i*.  
 spend (the night), *bāt*, *ā*.  
 sphynx, *abu'lhōl*.  
 spice, *bahār*, pl. *-āt*.  
 spider, *ʿenkabūt*.  
 spirit, *rūḥ*, pl. *arwāḥ*.  
 splendid, *ʿazīm*, pl. *uzām*.  
 spoil (something), *ḥāssar*, *yih*.  
 spoon, *ma'laqa*, pl. *ma'āliq*.  
 sport, *šēd*.  
 sportsman, *šaiyād*, pl. *-īn*.  
 spouse, *ḡōz* ; *ḡōze*.  
 spread out, *madd*, *i*.  
 spring (season), *rabīʿ*.  
 spring (water), *ʿēn*, pl. *ʿyān*.  
 squinting, *āḥwal*, fem. *ḥōlā*, pl.  
     *ḥūl*.  
 stairs, *sāllim*, pl. *sāldlim*.

stand, *wīqif*, *yūqaf*.  
 star, *nīgme*, pl. *nugúm*.  
 station (railway), *maḥáttā*, pl. -*át*.  
 stay, *fīḍil*, *a*.  
 steal, *sáraq*, *a*.  
 steamer, *wabūr* (*babūr*).  
 steel, *ṣulb*.  
 step (walking), *ḥáṭwa*, pl. *ḥaṭa-wát*; *dárage*, pl. -*át*.  
 step (of stairs), *sállim*, pl. *sälálim*.  
 still (adv.), *kāmān*; *līssa*.  
 stomach, *mīde*, pl. *ma'idāt*; *baṭn*.  
 stone, *ḥágar*, pl. *ḥigára*.  
 stool, *kúrsī*, pl. *kārāsī*.  
 story (tale), *ḥikáye*, pl. -*át*.  
 story (floor), *dór*, pl. *adwār*.  
 stove, *kānūn*, pl. *kaṭwānīn*.  
 strange, 'agīb.  
 strange, find, *istá'gīb*.  
 street, *síkke*, pl. *sīkak*.  
 string, *ḥēṭ*, pl. *ḥiṭān*; *ḥābl*, pl. *ḥibál*.  
 strong, *šedīd*, pl. *šidād*; *qáwī*, pl. *aqwīye*.  
 stump (of tree), *qúrme*, pl. *qarāmī*.  
 suddenly, 'ala *gāfle*.  
 suffer, *iḥtámāl*, *yihṭámāl*.  
 sugar, *sákkar*.  
 suit (of clothes), *bādlā(t)*.  
 suitable, *mūwāfiq*; *mūnāsib*.  
 summer, *ṣēf*.  
 summit, *rás*, pl. *rús*.  
 sun, *šāms*.  
 sunrise, *ṭulū' eššāms*.  
 Sunday, *yóm el'áḥad* (*elḥád*).

sunshade, *šāmsīye*.  
 supper, 'iše, pl. *a'sīye*.  
 surface, *saṭḥ*, pl. *suṭúḥ*.  
 surrender, *sállim*, *yis*.  
 swear, *ḥālīf*, *i*.  
 sweet, *ḥilw*, pl. *ḥilwīn*.  
 swollen, *wádrim*.  
 sword, *sēf*, pl. *sīyūf*.  
 syntax, *naḥw*.  
 Syria, *bilād eššām*.  
 Syrian, *šāmī*.

## T.

table, *ṭarabéze*, pl. -*át*.  
 tail, *dél*, pl. *diyál*.  
 tailor, *ḥaiyāṭ*, pl. -*īn*.  
 take, *āḥad* (*ḥad*), *yáḥod*.  
 take hold, *mísik*, *i*.  
 take off (clothes), *qála'*, *a*.  
 tale, *ḥikáye*, pl. -*át*.  
 talk, *itkállam*, *yitk*.  
 tall, *ṭawīl*, pl. *ṭuwál*.  
 tallow, *šaḥm*.  
 taste, *dāq*, *ú*.  
 tatters, *kúhnā*.  
 tea, *šāy*.  
 teach, 'állim, *yi*'.  
 teacher, *me'allim*, pl. -*īn*.  
 telescope, *naḍḍára*.  
 tender, *ṭārī*.  
 tent, *ḥéme*, pl. *ḥīyam*.  
 terrible, *mahál*.  
 than, *min* (with comparative);  
     'an (with positive).  
 thank, *šákar*, *u*.  
 thanks, *šukr*.

thank you, *káttar h́érak*.  
 then, *díkha 'lwáqt*.  
 there, *henák*.  
 there is; there are, *fih*.  
 there is not, *māfīš*.  
 thief, *ḥarāmī*, pl. -*īye*.  
 thigh, *faḥd*, pl. *afḥád*.  
 thin, *ruḥáiyā*; *rafi*.  
 thing, *šé*, pl. *ašyát*; *ḥága*, pl. -*át*.  
 think, *iftákar*, *yiftíkír*.  
 thirst, *'átāš*.  
 thirst (verb), *'itīš*, *a*.  
 thirsty, *'aṭšán*, pl. -*ín*.  
 thought, *fíkr*, pl. *áfkar*.  
 thread, *ḥét*, pl. *ḥitán*.  
 threshold, *'átabe*.  
 throw, *ráma*, *yírmī*.  
 thunder, *raḍ*.  
 Thursday, *yóm elḥamís*.  
 thus, *kídā*.  
 till, *līhádđ*.  
 time, *waqt*, pl. *auqát*.  
 time (once), *márra*; *nóba*, pl. -*át*.  
 tire, *áfáb*, *i*.  
 tire (intrans.), *tī'ib*, *a*.  
 tired, *tá'bán*, pl. -*ín*.  
 to, towards, *lī*; *līḥadd*; often  
     omitted after verbs of motion.  
 tobacco, *duḥán*.  
 to-day, *ennahárda*; *elyóm*.  
 to-morrow, *búkra*.  
 to-morrow morning, *búkra bádrī*  
     (*ṣubḥ*).  
 tongue, *lisán*, pl. *alsíne*.  
 tooth, *sinn*, pl. *esnán*; (molar),  
     *ḍírs*, pl. *ḍurús*.

top, *rás*, pl. *rús*.  
 touch, *mass*, *i*.  
 towards, *lī*; *línáhyet*.  
 towel, *fúṭa*, pl. *fúwaṭ*.  
 town, *bálād*, pl. *bilád*; *medíne*,  
     pl. *múḍun*.  
 trade, *tigára*.  
 trade, *tágir*, *yit*.  
 trader, *baiyá'*, pl. -*ín*; *tágir*, pl.  
     *tuggár*.  
 translate, *tárgam*, *yit*.  
 translation, *targáme*.  
 treasure, *mál*, pl. *amwál*.  
 tree, *šágara*, pl. -*át* (*ságara*);  
     collectively, *šágar*.  
 tribe, *qabíle*, pl. *qabá'il*; *ša'b*, pl.  
     *šú'úb*.  
 tribunal, *mehkáme*, pl. *maḥákim*.  
 trousers (Arab), *šarwál*, pl. *šārā-*  
     *wál*; (European), *banṭalún*, pl. -*át*.  
 true, *emín*, pl. *úmana*; *ṣāḥíḥ*;  
     *ḥaqíqī*.  
 truth, *ḥaqíqa*.  
 Tuesday, *yóm etteláta*.  
 turban, *'ámáme*, pl. *'amámim*.  
 Turk, *turkáuwi*; collectively, *turk*.  
 Turkey (country), *bilád etturk*.  
 turkey (bird), *dík rúmī*.  
 Turkish, *túrkī*.  
 turn, *dáuwar*, *yid*.  
 twine, *ḥét*; *dubára*.

## U.

umbrella, *šámsíye*, pl. -*ál*.  
 uncle, *'amm*, pl. *'amám*; *ḥálí*, pl.  
     *aḥwál*.

unclean, *wīsiḥ*, pl. -*īn*.  
 under ; underneath, *taḥt*.  
 understand, *fīhim*, *a*.  
 understanding, 'aql.  
 unjust, *zālim*, pl. -*īn*.  
 unnecessary, *muš lāzim*.  
 until, *ḥátta* ; *lāmmā*.  
 upon, 'ala.  
 use, *istá'mal*, *yist*.  
 useful, *nāfi'*, pl. -*īn* ; *mufid*.  
 useless, *balāš*.  
 utmost, to the, *fī dḥir eddā-*  
*rage*.

## V.

valley, *wādī*, pl. *widyán*.  
 vegetable, *ḥuḍār*, pl. *ḥadrawát*.  
 vein, 'irq, pl. 'urúq.  
 very, *ketír* ; *qāwī* ; *gíddan*.  
 vile, *dānī*, pl. *iyín* ; *qabíḥ*, pl.  
*qubāḥ*.  
 village, *kafr*, pl. *kufúr* ; *bālūd*,  
 pl. *bilād*.  
 vinegar, *ḥall*.  
 violet, *benāfsäg*.  
 visit, *zár*, *yezúr*.  
 viz., *yánī*.  
 voice, *šót*, pl. *aṣwát*.

## W.

wages, 'úgra, pl. *úgar* ; (daily),  
*yōmīye*.  
 walk, go a, *šámmi (i) elháwā*.  
 wall, *ḥét*, pl. *ḥitán*.  
 want, 'áz, *ú*.  
 war, *ḥarb*, pl. *ḥurúb*.

wardrobe, *dūláb*, pl. *dawālīb*.  
 ware, *baḍá'a*, pl. *baḍá'i'*.  
 warm, *dáffā*, *yidáffī*.  
 wash, *gásal*, *i*.  
 wasp, *dabbár*, pl. *dabābír*.  
 watch (timepiece), *sá'a*, pl. -*át*.  
 watchmaker, *sā'ātī*, pl. *īye*.  
 watchman, *gafír*, pl. *gufára*.  
 water, *mōiye*.  
 water (sprinkle), *rašš*, *yerúšš*.  
 water-pipe (smoking), *šīše* ; *nar-*  
*gileh*.  
 water-skin, *qírbe*, pl. *qírab*.  
 wave, *móg*, pl. *amwág*.  
 wax, *šam'*.  
 way, *ṭaríq*, pl. *ṭúruq* ; *sikke*, pl.  
*sikak*.  
 w. c., *keníf*, pl. *aknife* ; *bét el-*  
*mōiye*.  
 we, *īḥna*, *īḥnā (āḥnā)*.  
 weak, *da'if*, pl. *dú'afa*.  
 weather, *háwā* ; *dúnya*.  
 wedding, *gawáz*.  
 Wednesday, *yóm el'árba'*.  
 week, *gúm'a*, pl. *gúma'*.  
 weigh, *zán*, *yezín*.  
 welcome, *márḥaban* ; *áhlan wē-*  
*sáhlán*.  
 well (water), *bír*, pl. *biyár* (fem.).  
 west, *garb* ; *māgrīb*.  
 wet, *raṭb* ; *mablúl*.  
 what? *é* ; *éš*?  
 when, *lāmmā*.  
 when? *imte*?  
 whence? *min én* ; *min fén*?  
 where? *fén*?



wherefore? *'alašán ē*; *lē*?  
 which? *enhu*?  
 which (relative), *ellī (illī)*.  
 whip, *maswāqa*, pl. *masāwiq*;  
*kurbāg*, pl. *karābīg*.  
 white, *'ābyaḍ*, fem. *bēḍa*, pl. *bīḍ*.  
 whither? *fēn*?  
 who? *mīn*?  
 why? *lē*; *'ala šán ē*?  
 wind, *hāwā*; *rīḥ*.  
 wind, hot deadly, *samūm*.  
 window, *šibbāk*, pl. *šebābīk*.  
 wine, *nebīd*.  
 wing, *ganāḥ*, pl. *agnīhe*.  
 winter, *šitū*.  
 wise, *ḥakīm*, pl. *ḥūkama*; *šāṭir*,  
 pl. *šutṭār*.  
 wish, *merād*; *irāde*.  
 wish, *arād*, *ī*; *bidd-*, with pro-  
 nominal suffixes.  
 with, *mā'a*; *wāyā*; *bī*.  
 without, *bīla*; *mīn gēr*.  
 witness, *šāhid*, pl. *šuhūd*.  
 wolf, *dīb*, pl. *diyāb*.  
 woman, *mār'a*, pl. *nīswe (nis-  
 wān)*; *sitt*, pl. *sētāt*; *ḥarīm*.  
 wood (forest), *gābe*, pl. *-āt*.  
 wood (timber), *ḥāšab*.  
 word, *kīlme*, pl. *-āt*.  
 work, *šugl*, pl. *ašgāl*; *'amal*, pl.  
*a'māl*.  
 work, *ištāgal*, *yīštīgīl*.

worker, *šaḡgāl*, pl. *-īn*.  
 worm, *dūda*, pl. *dūd*.  
 worn out, *kūhnā*.  
 worth, *qīme*; *tāman*.  
 worthy, *mustāhil*.  
 wound, *garḥ*, pl. *guruḥ*.  
 wound, *gārah*, *a*.  
 wrap up, *laḥḥ*, *i*.  
 write, *kātab*; *kītīb*, *i*.  
 writing, *ḥaṭṭ*, pl. *ḥuṭṭūt*.  
 writing, in, *bilkitābe*.

## Y.

yawn, *iltāwib*, *yit*.  
 year, *séne*, pl. *sinīn (sanawāt)*.  
 year, last, *'amenāuwal*.  
 year, next, *esséne eggā'īye*.  
 yearly, *sanawī*; *kullī sāna*.  
 yellow, *āsfar*, fem. *šāfrā*, pl.  
*šufr*.  
 yes, *āiwa*; *nā'am*.  
 yesterday, *embāreh*.  
 yet, *līssā*.  
 yet, not, *līssā mā (mā . . š)*.  
 young, *zuḡāiyar*, pl. *-īn*.  
 youth, *šābāb*

## Z.

zinc, *tālīya*; *zinko*.  
 zoological gardens, *genēnet elḥay-  
 wānāt*.

## CORRIGENDA

Page 23, line 5, for *šéh* read *šéh*

„ 29, line 1, for *gúz', agzá'* read *gúz, agzá'*

„ 38, line 13, for *yúq'ud* read *yúq'ud*

„ 44, line 11, for 'is it not . . .' read 'it is not . . .'

„ 46, line 9, for *yerúh* read *yerúh*

„ 50, line 3, for *mírid* read *míriḍ*

„ 50, line 4, for *húmma* read *húmma*

„ 57, line 15, for *láḥbat* read *láḥbaṭ*

„ 64, line 2 from foot, for *bihés* read *bīhes*

„ 70, line 11 from foot, for *elhälm* read *elhäml*

„ 80, line 3, for *fī i'd elqāḍī* read *fī 'id elqāḍī*

„ 81, line 18, for *mā yisriqúlinā šé* read *mā yisriqúlinäš šé*

„ 118, last line, for *eláglä* read *el'áglä*







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

**AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS**

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

FEB 4 1938

FEB 5 1938

RET'D DEC 7 1981

JUL 16 1990

30 Aug '50 MB

JUN 23 1969 2

RECEIVED

JUN 18 '69-11 AM

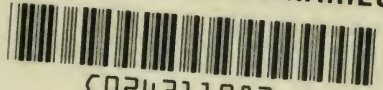
LOAN DEPT.

DEC 14 1981

AUTO DISC MAY 24 '90

JAN 10 2003

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C024311982

571134

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY



